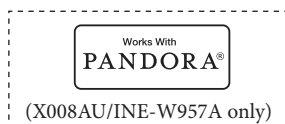




# 8-INCH ADVANCED NAVI STATION X008AU/X008EU

# 7-INCH ADVANCED NAVI STATION INE-W957A/INE-W957E



- OWNER'S MANUAL  
Please read before using this equipment.

**ALPINE ELECTRONICS OF AMERICA, INC.**  
19145 Gramercy Place, Torrance,  
California 90501, U.S.A.  
Phone 1-800-ALPINE-1 (1-800-257-4631)

**ALPINE ELECTRONICS MARKETING, INC.**  
1-7, Yukigaya-Otsukamachi, Ota-ku,  
Tokyo 145-0067, JAPAN  
Phone: 03-5499-4531

**ALPINE ELECTRONICS FRANCE S.A.R.L.**  
(RCS PONTOISE B 338 101 280)  
98, Rue de la Belle Etoile, Z.I. Paris Nord II,  
B.P. 50016, 95945 Roissy Charles de Gaulle  
Cedex, France  
Phone 01-48638989

**ALPINE ELECTRONICS OF AUSTRALIA PTY. LTD.**  
161-165 Princes Highway, Hallam  
Victoria 3803, Australia  
Phone 03-8787-1200

**ALPINE ELECTRONICS GmbH**  
Wilhelm-Wagenfeld-Str. 1-3, 80807 München, Germany  
Phone 089-32 42 640

**ALPINE ELECTRONICS OF U.K. LTD.**  
Alpine House  
Fletchamstead Highway, Coventry CV4 9TW, U.K.  
Phone 0870-33 33 763

**ALPINE ITALIA S.p.A.**  
Viale C. Colombo 8, 20090 Trezzano  
Sul Naviglio (MI), Italy  
Phone 02-484781

**ALPINE ELECTRONICS DE ESPAÑA, S.A.**  
Portal de Gamarra 36, Pabellón, 32  
01013 Vitoria (Alava)-APDO 133, Spain  
Phone 945-283588

# Contents

## Operating Instructions

### PRECAUTIONS

IMPORTANT INFORMATION, PLEASE  
READ CAREFULLY BEFORE USING THIS  
PRODUCT. .... 8

### WARNING

Points to Observe for Safe Usage ..... 8  
**WARNING** ..... 8  
**CAUTION** ..... 9  
**NOTICE** ..... 10  
**Discs Playable on This Unit** ..... 11

### Features

Auto user setting change ..... 15  
My Favourites ..... 15  
Easy sound setting by car type  
(i-Personalize) ..... 16  
About Dual Screen ..... 16  
Dual Screen Display Position ..... 17

### Getting Started

Accessory List ..... 18  
Location of Controls ..... 18  
Turning Power On or Off ..... 18  
Turning the System On ..... 19  
Initial System Start-Up ..... 19  
Inserting/Ejecting a Disc ..... 19  
    Inserting the Disc ..... 19  
    Removing the Disc ..... 19  
Adjusting the Screen Viewing Angle ..... 20  
Adjusting the Volume ..... 20  
Lowering Volume Quickly ..... 20

### Common Operations

Using My Favourites ..... 20  
User Registration ..... 21  
Setting My Favourites ..... 22  
    Adding My Favourites ..... 22  
    Editing My Favourites ..... 22  
    Displaying the Camera Image ..... 23  
    i-Personalize Setup ..... 23  
Easy Sound Setup mode/BASS ENGINE SQ  
    mode ..... 24  
    Easy Sound Setup mode ..... 24  
    BASS ENGINE SQ mode ..... 24  
Applying TuneIt ..... 25  
    Adjusting the sound via the Smartphone ..... 25  
    Facebook Notification Function ..... 25  
Settings When Switching Users ..... 27  
How to Input Characters and Numbers  
    (Keypad) ..... 27  
Top banner and Bottom banner Fade Out  
    Setting ..... 28  
Switching Sources ..... 28  
    Screen Off Function ..... 28  
Rear Entertainment Function ..... 29  
Switching the Dual Screen Display ..... 29  
Touch operation ..... 29  
Selecting an Item in a List ..... 29  
About the Indicator Display ..... 30

### Radio

Listening to the Radio ..... 30  
Presetting Stations Manually ..... 31  
Presetting Stations Automatically ..... 31  
Tuning to Preset Stations ..... 31

### CD/MP3/WMA/AAC

Playback ..... 31  
Repeat Play ..... 32  
M.I.X. (Random Play) ..... 32  
Selecting Folders (Concerning  
    MP3/WMA/AAC) ..... 32  
Searching from CD Text ..... 32  
File/Folder Name Search (Concerning MP3/  
    WMA/AAC) ..... 32  
About MP3/WMA/AAC ..... 33



## DVD

Playing a Disc .....	35
If a Menu Screen Appears .....	35
Numeric Keypad Input Operations .....	36
Displaying the Top Menu Screen .....	36
Displaying the Menu Screen .....	36
Stopping Playback (PRE STOP) .....	36
Stopping Playback .....	36
Fast-forwarding/Fast-reversing .....	37
Finding the Beginnings of Chapters/Tracks/ Files .....	37
Playing Still Frames (Pausing) .....	37
Forward frame-by-frame Playback .....	37
Slow Motion Playback .....	37
Selecting Folders .....	38
Repeat Playback .....	38
Searching by Title Number .....	38
Searching Directly by Chapter Number .....	38
Searching for a Desired Video File .....	39
Switching the Angle .....	39
Switching the Audio Tracks .....	39
Switching the Subtitles (Subtitle Language) .....	39
About DivX® .....	40

## Setup

### Setup Operation

#### General Setup

General Setup Operation .....	40
Language Setting .....	41
Setting the Scroll .....	41
Format settings .....	41
Setting the Menu Language .....	41
Remote Sensor Setting .....	41
Security Code Setting .....	41
Setting Security code .....	41
Setting Top banner and Bottom banner Display .....	42
Screen/LED Customize .....	42
Setting the Brightness of the Backlighting .....	42
Adjusting the Minimum Level of Backlight .....	42
Adjusting the Dimmer of Button Lighting at Night .....	42
Switching the Display Colour .....	42

Adjusting the Touch Panel .....	42
Initializing the Touch Panel Corrected Values .....	42
Visual Setting .....	42
Switching Display Modes .....	43
Adjusting the Live Contrast .....	43
Selecting the Visual EQ Mode (Factory's setting) .....	43
Adjusting Brightness .....	43
Adjusting Colour of Picture .....	43
Adjusting Tint of Picture .....	43
Adjusting Image Contrast .....	44
Adjusting Picture Quality .....	44
Saving and calling the adjusted picture quality .....	44
About X008AU/X008EU/INE-W957A/ INE-W957E .....	44
Displaying the Product Information .....	44
Checking the DivX® Registration .....	44
Initializing the System .....	44
Installation Setup .....	45
Setting the External Audio Processor On/Off .....	45
Setting the Digital Output .....	45

### Sound Setup

Sound Setup Operation .....	45
Setting the Balance/Fader/Subwoofer .....	46
Setting the Balance/Fader .....	46
Rear Speaker Setting .....	46
Turning Subwoofer ON/OFF .....	46
Adjusting the Subwoofer Level .....	46
Setting the Subwoofer Phase .....	46
Setting the MX (Media Xpander) .....	46
Equalizer Presets .....	47
Adjusting the Parametric Equalizer Curve (Parametric EQ) .....	47
Adjusting the Time Correction (Time Correction) .....	48
Adjusting the Crossover Settings (X-OVER) .....	48
Setting Defeat .....	49
Volume Setting .....	49
Setting the Volume for Each Source .....	49
About Time Correction .....	49
About the Crossover .....	50

## Source Setup

Source Layout Setting .....	51
Source Layout Setting .....	51
Setting the Slide Source Change .....	51
Setting the Easy Sound Setup Position .....	52
Customizing the Source Banner .....	52
Disc Setting .....	52
Changing the language setting .....	52
Setting of the Menu Language .....	52
Setting of the Audio Language .....	52
Setting of the Subtitle Language .....	52
Changing the Country Code Setting .....	52
Setting the Rating Level (Parental Lock) ....	53
Setting the TV Screen Mode .....	53
AUX Setting .....	54
Setting the AUX Mode .....	54
Setting the Primary AUX Name (AUX Setup) .....	54
Setting the AUX3 .....	55
Setting the AUX3 Sel. (Switching the Visual Input Signal System) .....	55
RSE Setting .....	55
Setting the Rear Seat Entertainment System .....	55
Setting the BLUETOOTH Pandora® (X008AU/ INE-W957A only) .....	55
TuneIt Setting .....	55
Setting the Communication Mode with a Smartphone .....	55

## BLUETOOTH Setup

BLUETOOTH Setup Operation .....	56
BLUETOOTH Setting .....	56
Displaying BLUETOOTH Information .....	56
Registering the BLUETOOTH Device .....	56
Automatic Connection setting .....	57
Setting the Passcode .....	57
Changing the Character Code of the Phone Book .....	57
Selecting the Output Speaker .....	57
Adjusting the Caller Volume .....	57
Adjusting the Microphone Level .....	57
Adjusting the Ring Tone Volume .....	57
Deleting All the Histories .....	57

## Camera Setup

Camera Setup Operation .....	58
Direct Camera Setting .....	58
Setting the Camera Input .....	58
AUX Camera Setting .....	59
Setting the Camera Input .....	59
Camera Interrupt Setting (Power OFF Mode) .....	60
Reverse Mute Setting .....	60

## BLUETOOTH Operation

Setup Before Using .....	61
About BLUETOOTH .....	61
About the Hands-Free Phone .....	61
Before Using BLUETOOTH .....	61

## Hands-Free Phone Control

Connecting a BLUETOOTH Device .....	61
Disconnecting the BLUETOOTH Connection .....	61
Changing the connecting BLUETOOTH Device .....	62
Answering a Call .....	62
Adjusting ringtone volume .....	62
Hanging up the Telephone .....	62
Calling .....	62
Using Short Cut Dialing to Make a Call ....	62
Dialing a Number In Call History .....	62
Dialing a Number In the Phone Book .....	63
Entering a Phone Number to Make a Call .....	63
Redial Function .....	63
Using Voice Recognition function .....	63
Using Siri .....	63
Voice Dial Function .....	64
Operations During a Conversation .....	64
Adjusting the Speech Volume .....	64
Changing the Voice Output .....	64
DTMF (Touch-Tone) Function .....	64
Phone Book Function .....	65
Synchronizing the Phone Book .....	65
Adding the Phone Book .....	65
Deleting the Phone Book Entries .....	65
Assigning as a Short Cut Dialing Number ....	66

## BLUETOOTH Audio

Playback .....	66
Repeat Play .....	67
M.I.X. (Random Play) .....	67
Selecting Groups .....	67
Search Function .....	67

## Auxiliary Device (Optional)

Operating Auxiliary Devices (Optional) .....	67
Operating an External DVD Player .....	68
Change to the External DVD Mode .....	68
About the DVD Operation Screen .....	68
Operating an External DVD Changer .....	69
Change to the External DVD Changer	
Mode .....	69
About the DVD Changer Operation	
Screen .....	69
Operating the Mobile Digital TV Receiver	
(DVB-T) .....	69
Changing to the Mobile Digital TV Receiver	
(DVB-T) Mode .....	69
About the DVB-T operation screen .....	69
Operating a TV .....	70
Change to the TV mode .....	70
About the TV operation screen .....	70

## Camera Operation (Optional)

Rear Camera Operation .....	70
Displaying the rear view video while the car	
is in reverse .....	70
Switching the Image Pattern for the Rear	
Camera .....	71
Guide Display ON/OFF Setting .....	71
Adjusting the Caution Display Location .....	71
About the Rear Camera Guide .....	71
Front Camera Operation .....	73
Displaying the Front View Video	
Manually .....	73
Switching the Image Pattern for the Front	
Camera .....	73
About the adjustment of guide display	
ON/OFF setting and adjustment of Caution	
display location .....	73
Other Camera Operation .....	74
About the adjustment of the Caution display	
location .....	74

## USB Memory (Optional)

Playback .....	75
Repeat Play .....	75
Random Play (M.I.X.) .....	75
Random Play (M.I.X. ALL) .....	76
Searching for a Desired Song .....	76
File/Folder Name Search .....	76
Tag Search .....	76
Direct Up/Down Function .....	77
Select the desired Folder (Folder up/down) ....	77

## iPod/iPhone (Optional)

Playback .....	78
Searching for a Music File .....	79
Searching for a Desired Video File .....	79
Alphabet Skip Function .....	79
Direct Up/Down Function .....	80
Search Position Memory .....	80
Repeat Play .....	80
Random Play (Shuffle) .....	80
Random Play (Shuffle All) .....	80

## HDMI Device (Optional)

### MirrorLink™ Operation (Optional)

DISCLAIMER .....	81
Using MirrorLink™ .....	81
Switching the Media Control button	
Operation .....	82
Setting the Media Control button .....	82

### Pandora® internet radio (optional) (X008AU/INE-W957A)

Listening to Pandora® .....	83
iPhone Pandora® .....	83
BLUETOOTH Pandora® .....	83
“Thumbs” Feedback .....	84
Searching for a Desired Station .....	84
Creating a New Station .....	84
QuickMix .....	84
Bookmarking a Desired Track or Artist .....	85

## Information

Product Software Update .....	85
About DVDs .....	85
List of Language Codes .....	87
List of Country Codes .....	88
In Case of Difficulty .....	90
If this Message Appears .....	91
Specifications .....	93
END USER LICENCE AGREEMENT	
(Microsoft) .....	95
END USER LICENCE AGREEMENT	
(NAVTEQ) .....	96

---

## Installation and Connections

<b>Warning</b> .....	<b>98</b>
<b>Caution</b> .....	<b>98</b>
<b>Precautions</b> .....	<b>98</b>
Installation .....	99
Connections .....	102
System Example .....	104

## NAVIGATION SECTION

# Operating Instructions

## PRECAUTIONS

### IMPORTANT INFORMATION, PLEASE READ CAREFULLY BEFORE USING THIS PRODUCT.

This product is intended to safely provide turn-by-turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please read the following precautions to ensure that you use this navigation system correctly.

- *This product is not a substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this navigation system should never supersede any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment and/or knowledge of safe driving practises. Do not follow route suggestions if the navigation system instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal manoeuvre, places you in an unsafe situation, or routes you into an area which you consider unsafe.*
- *Glance at the screen only when necessary and safe to do so. If prolonged viewing of the screen is necessary, stop in a safe and legal manner and location.*
- *Do not input destinations, change settings, or access any functions requiring a prolonged view of the monitor while you are driving. Stop in a safe and legal manner and location before attempting to access the system.*
- *When using the navigation system to find/route to an emergency service, please contact the facility to validate and verify availability, prior to driving to it. Not all locations of emergency service providers such as police and fire stations, hospitals, and clinics are contained in the database. Please use your own judgment and your ability to ask for directions in these situations.*
- *The map database contained within the media (SD memory card) in which it is stored is the most recent map data available at the time of production. Because of changes in streets and neighborhoods, there may be situations where the navigation system may not be able to route you to your desired destination. In these cases, use your own personal judgment.*
- *The map database is designed to provide you with route suggestions, it does not take account of the relative safety of a suggested route, or of factors which may affect the time required to reach your destination. The system does not reflect road closures or construction, road characteristics (i.e. type of road surface, slope or grade, weight or height restrictions, etc.), traffic congestion, weather conditions, or any other factors which may affect the safety or timing of your driving experience. Use your personal judgment if the navigation system is unable to provide you with an alternate route.*
- *There may be situations where the navigation system may display the vehicle's location erroneously. Use your own driving judgment in this situation, taking into account current driving conditions. Please be aware that in this situation, the navigation system should correct the vehicle's position automatically; however, there may be times where you may have to correct the position yourself. If this is the case, stop in a safe and legal manner and location before attempting operation.*

- *Make certain that the volume level of the unit is set to a level which still allows you to hear outside traffic and emergency vehicles. Driving while unable to hear outside sounds could cause an accident.*
- *Please make certain that any other person who intends on using this navigation system reads these precautions and the following instructions carefully.*

**If there is anything in the manual about the operation of the navigation system which you are uncertain about, please contact your local Alpine authorised navigation dealer before using the navigation system.**

## WARNING

### Points to Observe for Safe Usage

- *Read this manual carefully before using this disc and the system components. They contain instructions on how to use this product in a safe and effective manner. Alpine cannot be responsible for problems resulting from failure to observe the instructions in this manual.*
- *This manual uses various pictorial displays to show you how to use this product safely and to alert you to potential dangers resulting from improper connections and operation. Following are the meanings of these pictorial displays. It is important to fully understand the meanings of these pictorial displays in order to use this manual and the system properly.*



### WARNING

- Operation of the system while driving is dangerous. Users should stop vehicle before operating the software.
- Road conditions and regulations take precedence over information contained on the map display: observe actual traffic restrictions and circumstances while driving.
- This software is designed for use exclusively in the X008AU/X008EU/INE-W957A/INE-W957E. It cannot and may not be used in conjunction with other hardware.



## WARNING

**This symbol means important instructions.  
Failure to heed them can result in serious injury  
or death.**

### **INSTALL THE PRODUCT CORRECTLY SO THAT THE DRIVER CANNOT WATCH TV/VIDEO UNLESS THE VEHICLE IS STOPPED AND THE EMERGENCY BRAKE IS APPLIED.**

It is dangerous (and illegal in many states) for the driver to watch TV/Video while driving a vehicle. Installing this product incorrectly enables the driver to watch TV/Video while driving. This may cause a distraction, preventing the driver from looking ahead, thus causing an accident. The driver or other people could be severely injured.

### **DO NOT WATCH VIDEO WHILE DRIVING.**

Watching the video may distract the driver from looking ahead of the vehicle and cause an accident.

### **DO NOT OPERATE ANY FUNCTION THAT TAKES YOUR ATTENTION AWAY FROM SAFELY DRIVING YOUR VEHICLE.**

Any function that requires your prolonged attention should only be performed after coming to a complete stop. Always stop the vehicle in a safe location before performing these functions. Failure to do so may result in an accident.

### **DO NOT FOLLOW ROUTE SUGGESTIONS IF THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM INSTRUCTS YOU TO PERFORM AN UNSAFE OR ILLEGAL MANEUVER, OR PLACES YOU IN AN UNSAFE SITUATION OR AREA.**

This product is not a substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions by this system should never supersede any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practise.

### **KEEP THE VOLUME AT A LEVEL WHERE YOU CAN STILL HEAR OUTSIDE NOISES WHILE DRIVING.**

Excessive volume levels that obscure sounds such as emergency vehicle sirens or road warning signals (train crossings, etc.) can be dangerous and may result in an accident. LISTENING AT LOUD VOLUME LEVELS IN A CAR MAY ALSO CAUSE HEARING DAMAGE.

### **MINIMIZE DISPLAY VIEWING WHILE DRIVING.**

Viewing the display may distract the driver from looking ahead of the vehicle and cause an accident.

### **DO NOT DISASSEMBLE OR ALTER.**

Doing so may result in an accident, fire or electric shock.

### **USE ONLY IN CARS WITH A 12 VOLT NEGATIVE GROUND.**

(Check with your dealer if you are not sure.) Failure to do so may result in fire, etc.

### **KEEP SMALL OBJECTS SUCH AS SCREWS OUT OF THE REACH OF CHILDREN.**

Swallowing them may result in serious injury. If swallowed, consult a physician immediately.

### **USE THE CORRECT AMPERE RATING WHEN REPLACING FUSES.**

Failure to do so may result in fire or electric shock.

### **DO NOT BLOCK VENTS OR RADIATOR PANELS.**

Doing so may cause heat to build up inside and may result in fire.

### **USE THIS PRODUCT FOR MOBILE 12V APPLICATIONS.**

Use for other than its designed application may result in fire, electric shock or other injury.

### **DO NOT PLACE HANDS, FINGERS OR FOREIGN OBJECTS IN INSERTION SLOTS OR GAPS.**

Doing so may result in personal injury or damage to the product.



## CAUTION

**This symbol means important instructions.  
Failure to heed them can result in injury or  
material property damage.**

### **HALT USE IMMEDIATELY IF A PROBLEM APPEARS.**

Failure to do so may cause personal injury or damage to the product. Return it to your authorized Alpine dealer or the nearest Alpine Service Centre for repairing.

### **KEEP FINGERS AWAY WHILE THE MOTORIZED FRONT PANEL OR MOVING MONITOR IS IN MOTION.**

Failure to do so may result in personal injury or damage to the product.

## NOTICE

### Product Cleaning

Use a soft dry cloth for periodic cleaning of the product. For more severe stains, please dampen the cloth with water only. Anything else has the chance of dissolving the paint or damaging the plastic.

### Temperature

Be sure the temperature inside the vehicle is between +45°C (+113°F) and 0°C (+32°F) before turning your unit on.

### Moisture Condensation

You may notice the disc playback sound wavering due to condensation. If this happens, remove the disc from the player and wait about an hour for the moisture to evaporate.

### Damaged Disc

Do not attempt to play cracked, warped, or damaged discs. Playing a bad disc could severely damage the playback mechanism.

### Maintenance

If you have problems, do not attempt to repair the unit yourself. Return it to your Alpine dealer or the nearest Alpine Service Station for servicing.

### Never Attempt the Following

Do not grip or pull out the disc while it is being pulled back into the player by the automatic reloading mechanism.

Do not attempt to insert a disc into the unit when the unit power is off.



### Inserting Discs

Your player accepts only one disc at a time for playback. Do not attempt to load more than one disc.

Make sure the label side is facing up when you insert the disc. "Disc error" will be displayed on your player if you insert a disc incorrectly. If "Disc error" continues to be displayed even though the disc has been inserted correctly, push the RESET switch with a pointed object such as a ballpoint pen.

Playing a disc while driving on a very bumpy road may result in skips, but this will not scratch the disc or damage the player.

### Irregular Shaped Discs

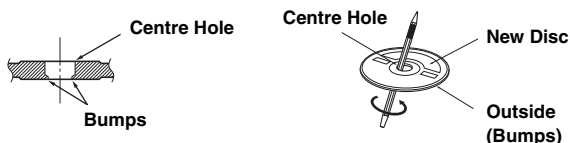
Be sure to use round shaped discs only for this unit and never use any special shaped discs.

Use of special shaped discs may cause damage to the mechanism.



### New Discs

To prevent the disc from jamming, "Disc error" is displayed if discs with irregular surfaces are inserted or if discs are inserted incorrectly. When a new disc is ejected immediately after initial loading, use your finger to feel around the inside of the centre hole and outside edge of the disc. If you feel any small bumps or irregularities, this could inhibit proper loading of the disc. To remove the bumps, rub the inside edge of the hole and outside edge of the disc with a ballpoint pen or other such instrument, then insert the disc again.



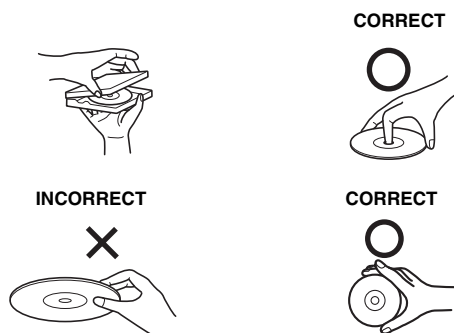
### Installation Location

Make sure the X008AU/X008EU/INE-W957A/INE-W957E will not be installed in a location subjected to:

- Direct sun and heat
- High humidity and water
- Excessive dust
- Excessive vibrations

### Correct Handling

Do not drop the disc while handling. Hold the disc so you will not leave fingerprints on the surface. Do not affix tape, paper, or gummed labels to the disc. Do not write on the disc.



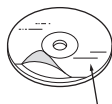
### Disc Cleaning

Fingerprints, dust, or soil on the surface of the disc could cause the DVD player to skip. For routine cleaning, wipe the playing surface with a clean, soft cloth from the centre of the disc to the outer edge. If the surface is heavily soiled, dampen a clean, soft cloth in a solution of mild neutral detergent before cleaning the disc.

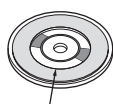


Disc Accessories

There are various accessories available on the market for protecting the disc surface and improving sound quality. However, most of them will influence the thickness and/or diameter of the disc. Using such accessories can cause operational problems. We recommend not using these accessories on discs played in Alpine DVD players.



Transparent Sheet



Disc Stabilizer

Operation of some of the functions of this unit is very complex. Because of this, it was deemed necessary to place these functions into a special screen. This will restrict operation of these functions to times when the vehicle is parked. This ensures the focus of the driver's attention will be on the road and not on the X008AU/X008EU/INE-W957A/INE-W957E. This has been done for the safety of the driver and passengers. Setup operations cannot be made if the car is moving. The car must be parked and the parking brake must be engaged for the procedure described in the Owner's Manual to be valid. The warning "If you are driving, please pull over before using this function." will be displayed if any attempts are made to perform these operations while driving.

- The X008AU/X008EU/INE-W957A/INE-W957E draws minimal current even when its power switch is turned off. If the switched power (ignition) lead of the X008AU/X008EU/INE-W957A/INE-W957E is connected directly to the positive (+) post of the vehicle's battery, the battery may be discharged. An SPST (Single-Pole, Single-Throw) switch (sold separately) can be added to simplify this procedure. Then, you can simply place it in the OFF position when you leave the vehicle. Turn the SPST switch back ON before using the X008AU/X008EU/INE-W957A/INE-W957E. For connecting the SPST switch, refer to the "Connection Diagram of SPST Switch (sold separately)" (page 101). If the power (ignition) lead is unswitched, it must be disconnected from the battery post should the vehicle be left unused for an extended period of time.

Discs Playable on This Unit

Playable Discs

The discs listed below can be played on this unit.

	Mark (logo)	Recorded Content	Disc size
DVD Video		Audio + Video	12 cm*
Music CD		Audio	12 cm
DivX®		Audio + Video	12 cm

\* Two-layer DVD disc compatible

The formatted discs listed below can be played on this unit.

	CD-R/ CD-RW	DVD-R/ DVD-RW	DVD+R/ DVD+RW
CD Format	○		
MP3 Format ("mp3")	○	○	○
WMA Format ("wma")	○	○	○
AAC Format ("aac", "m4a")	○	○	○
DVD Video Format		○	○
DivX Format ("avi", "divx")	○	○	○

- Discs that are not finalised cannot be played back.



---

## Discs that cannot be played

DVD-ROMs, DVD-RAMs, CD-ROMs (excluding MP3/WMA/AAC files), photo CDs, etc.

---

## DualDisc





This unit is not compatible with DualDisc.

Using a DualDisc may cause unit malfunction, and may cause disc damage when the disc is inserted/ejected.

---

## DVD region number (playable region number)

Region numbers supported by this unit are as follows. DVDs with a region number other than those listed below, cannot be played on this DVD player.

X008AU/INE-W957A		
X008EU/INE-W957E		

---

## Using compact discs (CD/CD-R/CD-RW)

If you use unspecified compact discs, correct performance cannot be guaranteed.

You can play CD-Rs (CD-Recordables)/CD-RWs (CD-ReWritables) which have been recorded only on audio devices. You can also play CD-Rs/CD-RWs containing MP3/WMA/AAC formatted audio files.

- Some of the following discs may not play on this unit:  
Flawed discs, discs with fingerprints, discs exposed to extreme temperatures or sunlight (e.g., left in the car or this unit), discs recorded under unstable conditions, discs on which a recording failed or a re-recording was attempted, copy-protected CDs which do not conform to the audio CD industry standard.
- Use discs with MP3/WMA/AAC files written in a format compliant with this unit. For details, see pages 33 and 34.

To customers using CD-R/CD-RW

- If a CD-R/CD-RW cannot be played back, make sure the last recording session was closed (finalised).
- Finalise the CD-R/CD-RW if necessary, and attempt playback again.

---

## Tips for making your own discs

The X008AU/X008EU/INE-W957A/INE-W957E plays DVD Video, DivX<sup>®</sup>, Audio CD and has a built in MP3/WMA/AAC decoder.

The following information is designed to help you create your own music CDs (either Audio CD or MP3/WMA/AAC encoded CD-R/RW files).

### What is the difference between an Audio and MP3/WMA/AAC CD?

An Audio CD is the same format as the commercial CDs you buy in the store (also known as CD-DA). MP3 (MPEG Audio Layer 3)/WMA (Windows Media Audio)/AAC (Advanced Audio Coding) is a data file that uses a compression scheme to reduce the size of the music file\*.

- \* If the first session on a disc containing both CD-DA data and MP3/WMA/AAC data is a CD-DA file, only CD-DA files will be played.

### Multisession CD-R/RW:

Once a recording has been stopped, this is considered one session. If the disc is not closed (finalised), additional data may be added. Once this additional data has been recorded, this becomes a "multisession" CD.

### Properly formatted MP3/WMA/AAC Discs:

Use ISO9660 formatting to insure proper playback. You may use standard ISO naming Level 1 (8.3 DOS standard), Level 2 (32 characters) or Joliet (Windows or Macintosh long filenames) file naming conventions\*.

- \* Please consult the Owner's manual for additional information.

---

## On handling compact discs (CD/CD-R/CD-RW)

- Do not touch the surface.
- Do not expose the disc to direct sunlight.
- Do not affix stickers or labels.
- Clean the disc when it is dusty.
- Make sure that the disc is smooth and flat.
- Do not use commercially available disc accessories.

**Do not leave the disc in the car or the unit for a long time.**  
**Never expose the disc to direct sunlight.**

Heat and humidity may damage the disc and you may not be able to play it again.

---

---

## Using DVD-Rs/DVD-RWs/DVD+Rs/DVD+RWs

- This unit is compatible with discs recorded in the standard DVD-Video format.
- Note that discs not finalised (processed to enable to play on playback-only DVD players) cannot be played on this DVD player.
- Some discs may not play back, depending on the recording device and disc format.
- Discs or files utilizing copy protection, may not be playable. Some recording systems may not properly format copied files to enable proper playback.
- In the following cases, the disc may not play on this unit: discs recorded by certain DVD recorders, certain irregular discs, flawed discs, dirty discs, when the pickup lens of this DVD player is dirty, or when moisture condensation has occurred inside the unit.
- Be sure to follow all cautions included with your DVD-Rs/DVD-RWs/DVD+Rs/DVD+RWs discs.
- Do not put stickers, seals, or tape on the label side of DVD-Rs/DVD-RWs/DVD+Rs/DVD+RWs.
- Compared to the regular discs, DVD-Rs/DVD-RWs/DVD+Rs/DVD+RWs are more affected by heat, moisture, and direct sunlight. If left in a car, etc., damage may occur and it might not play on this unit.
- The operable temperature range for disc playback is as follows:  
DVD-R/DVD-RW: -25 ~ +70°C  
DVD+R/DVD+RW: +5 ~ +55°C

---

## Disc terminology

### Title

If titles are programmed for the DVD, these are the largest units of division of the information recorded on the disc.

### Chapter

Each Title may also be divided into smaller divisions, called chapters. These can be specific scenes or musical selections.

---

## Protecting the USB connector

- Only an iPod/iPhone or USB memory can be connected to the USB connector on this unit. Correct performance using other USB products cannot be guaranteed.
- If the USB connector is used, be sure to use only the supplied connector cable with the unit. A USB hub is not supported.
- Depending on the connected USB memory device, the unit may not function or some functions may not be performed.
- The audio file format that can be played back on the unit is MP3/WMA/AAC.
- The video file format that can be played back on the unit is DivX®.
- Artist/song name, etc., can be displayed. Certain, special characters may not be correctly displayed.



*Alpine accepts no responsibility for lost data, etc., even if data, etc., is lost while using this product.*

---

## On Handling USB memory

- This unit can control a memory storage device that supports the USB Mass Storage Class (MSC) protocol. Playable audio file formats are MP3, WMA and AAC.
- USB memory function is not guaranteed. Use USB memory according to the terms of agreement. Read the USB memory Owner's Manual thoroughly.
- Avoid usage or storage in the following locations:
  - Anywhere in the car exposed to direct sunlight or high temperatures.
  - Anywhere the possibility of high humidity or corrosive substances are present.
- Fix the USB memory in a location where driver operation will not be hindered.
- USB memory may not function correctly at high or low temperature.
- Use only certified USB memory. Note that even certified USB memory, may not function correctly depending on its type or state.
- Depending on the settings of the USB memory type, memory state or encoding software, the unit may not play back or display properly.
- Files protected by DRM (Digital Rights Management), cannot be played back on this unit. These include AAC formatted files purchased from the iTunes Store and WMA or other files with some form of copyright protection.
- USB memory may take time to start playback. If there is a particular file other than audio in the USB memory, it may take considerable time before the file is played back or searched.
- The unit can play back "mp3", "wma" or "m4a" file extensions.
- Do not add the above extensions to a file other than audio data. This non-audio data will not be recognised. The resulting playback may contain noise that can damage speakers and/or amplifiers.
- It is recommended to back up important data on a personal computer.
- Do not remove the USB device while playback is in progress. Change SOURCE to something other than USB, then remove the USB device to prevent possible damage to its memory.

- 
- *This item incorporates copy protection technology that is protected by U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights of Rovi Corporation. Reverse engineering and disassembly are prohibited.*
  - *Manufactured under licence from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.*
  - *Windows Media, and the Windows logo are trademarks, or registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.*
  - *iPhone, iPod, iPod classic, iPod nano, iPod touch, and iTunes are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.*
  - *“Made for iPod,” and “Made for iPhone,” mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod, or iPhone, respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards. Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod, or iPhone may affect wireless performance.*
  - *Pandora, the Pandora logo, and the Pandora trade dress are trademarks or registered trademarks of Pandora Media, Inc., used with permission. Pandora is currently available in the U.S., Australia and New Zealand.*
  - *BlackBerry<sup>®</sup>, RIM<sup>®</sup>, Research In Motion<sup>®</sup> and related trademarks, names and logos are the property of Research In Motion Limited and are registered and/or used in the U.S. and countries around the world. Used under licence from Research In Motion Limited.*
  - *Android is a trademark of Google Inc.*
  - *DivX<sup>®</sup>, DivX Certified<sup>®</sup> and associated logos are trademarks of Rovi Corporation or its subsidiaries and are used under licence.*
  - *The BLUETOOTH<sup>®</sup> word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Alpine Electronics, Inc. is under licence.*
  - *The terms HDMI and HDMI High-Definition Multimedia Interface, and the HDMI Logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing LLC in the United States and other countries.*
  - *MPEG Layer-3 audio coding technology licensed from Fraunhofer IIS and Thomson. Supply of this product only conveys a licence for private, non-commercial use and does not convey a licence nor imply any right to use this product in any commercial (i.e. revenue-generation) real time broadcasting (terrestrial, satellite, cable and/or any other media), broadcasting/streaming via internet, intranets and/or other networks or in other electronic content distribution systems, such as pay-audio or audio-on-demand applications. An independent licence for such use is required. For details, please visit <http://www.mp3licensing.com>*

©2014 NAVTEQ. All rights reserved.

Portions ©2014, Microsoft Corporation. All Rights Reserved.

# Features

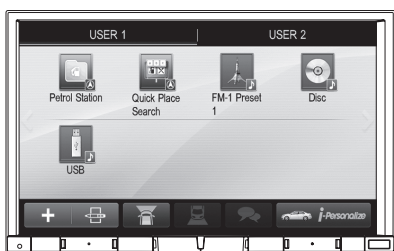
## Auto user setting change

With the X008AU/X008EU/INE-W957A/INE-W957E, you can register up to two users.

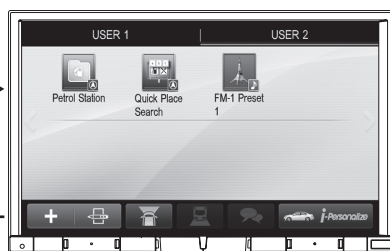
Each user can configure their own preferred settings.

By registering their respective BLUETOOTH devices to the unit, each user can be identified automatically.

### USER1



### USER2



- For details of how to register a BLUETOOTH device, refer to “User Registration” (page 21).
- If USER2 is recognised while USER1 is using the system, a confirmation message is displayed.
- If no BLUETOOTH device has been registered or if you want to switch users manually, touch the user tab key on the top of the screen.
- For details of which settings are affected by switching users, refer to “Settings When Switching Users” (page 27).

## My Favourites

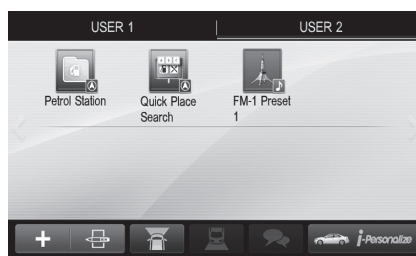
Up to 80 My Favourites can be registered as shortcut keys for each registered user.

Frequently used functions and handy functions can be customized for your convenience.

### USER1



### USER2



For details of how to register or add My Favourites, how to change the name, etc., refer to “Using My Favourites” (page 20).

## Easy sound setting by car type (i-Personalize)

This function lets you set the best audio environment for your car.

On the unit, select and set the car category/steering wheel position/speaker type and size/seat material.

For details of how to configure the settings, refer to “Car Specific Sound Setup” (page 23).

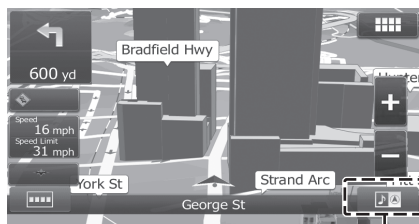
### Display example when setting is completed



## About Dual Screen

If you want to display the music playback screen while route guidance is displayed, etc., you can display the Navigation and Audio/Visual screens simultaneously.

### Navigation Full screen



Touch the Navigation screen portion.

or

Press the  (MAP) button.

### Dual Screen



Touch .

Touch  \*1

or

Press the  button.

### Audio/Visual Full screen

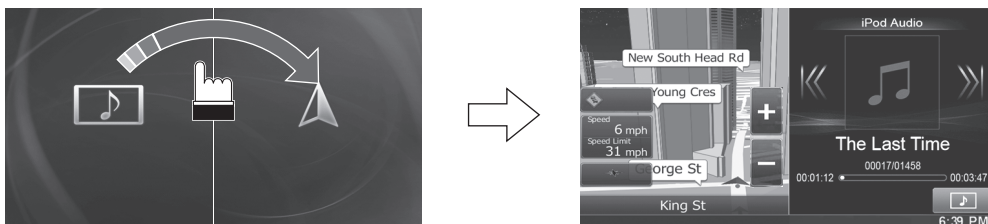


\*1 During video playback, [Dual Wide], [Dual Full] and [Full Screen] appear on the screen for selecting the screen size. For details, refer to “Switching the Dual Screen Display” (page 29).

## Dual Screen Display Position

You can switch the Audio/Visual and Navigation screens using drag & drop.

To switch the screens, touch the middle of the Audio/Visual screen and drag it to the navigation screen. The screens will switch positions when you remove your finger.



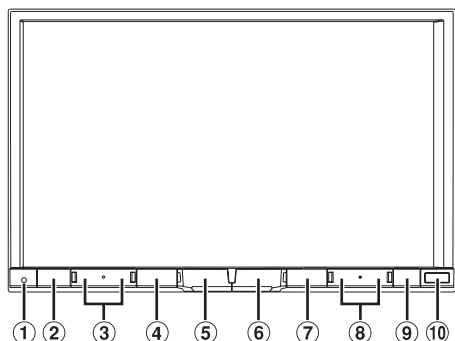
- Drag and drop the navigation screen will change to navigation full screen.

# Getting Started

## Accessory List

- X008AU/X008EU/INE-W957A/INE-W957E..... 1
  - Power cable..... 1
  - Flush head screw (M5×8) (INE-W957A/INE-W957E only)...6
  - Screw (M5×8).....8
  - GPS Antenna.....1
  - Antenna mounting plate.....1
  - Cable clamp for antenna.....1set
  - AUX/PRE OUT cable.....1
  - CAMERA/W.REMOTE cable.....1
  - USB extension cable.....1
  - Microphone.....1
  - SD memory card (X008AU/INE-W957Aonly).....1
  - Cushion (X008AU/X008EU only).....1
  - Mounting sleeve (INE-W957A/INE-W957E only).....1
  - Face plate (INE-W957A/INE-W957E only).....1
  - Bracket key (INE-W957A/INE-W957E only).....2
  - Owner's Manual.....1set
- To install the X008AU/X008EU, refer to the manual in the separately purchased installation kit for each car type.

## Location of Controls



• The illustration is for X008AU/X008EU.

- ① **RESET switch**  
The system of this unit is reset.
- ② **★/🚗 (My Favourites) button**  
The My Favourites screen for registered User1 or User2 is displayed.
- ③ **∇/▲ (DOWN/UP) button**  
Press to adjust the volume.
- ④ **MUTE/🔇 button**  
Press to activate/deactivate the mute mode.  
Press and hold this button for at least 3 seconds to turn the power off.
- ⑤ **🎵/AUDIO button**  
Displays the Audio/Visual screen. If the Audio/Visual screen is already displayed, changes the source.  
Press and hold this button for at least 3 seconds to activate the "Easy Sound Setup" mode (page 24). You can select this menu to be displayed on the left or right of the screen. For details, refer to "Setting the Easy Sound Setup Position" (page 52).

- ⑥ **⬆️ (MAP) button**  
Recalls the navigation map screen.  
Press again to switch to Navigation menu screen.  
Press and hold this button for at least 3 seconds to change to Go Home route screen. If the Home is not set yet, it will change to Home setting screen.  
For details of navigation operations, refer to "Navigation System OM".
- ⑦ **📞 (PHONE) button**  
Recalls the Telephone Menu screen.  
When a hands-free phone with Voice Recognition is connected, press and hold for at least 3 seconds to switch to the Voice Recognition mode.
- ⑧ **⏮️ / ⏭️ button**  
Press to seek down/up station in radio mode or down/up track, chapter, etc., in other audio/visual source.
- ⑨ **⏏️ (Eject) button**
- ⑩ **Remote Sensor**  
Point the remote control transmitter towards the remote sensor within a range of 2 metres.

### Optional Remote Control Interface Box

This unit is operable using the vehicle's secondary radio controls. An Alpine Remote Control Interface Box (optional) is required. For details, contact your Alpine dealer.

### Controllable with Remote Control

This unit can be controlled with an optional Alpine remote control. For details, consult your Alpine dealer. Point the optional remote control transmitter at the remote control sensor.

### About the button descriptions used in this Owner's Manual

The buttons found on the face of the unit are expressed in bold (e.g. **★ (My Favourites)**). The buttons found on the touch-screen display are shown in bold within brackets, [ ] (e.g. [**×**]).

## Turning Power On or Off

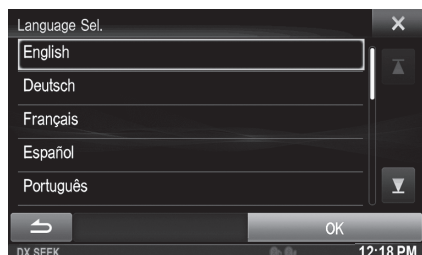
Some of this unit's functions cannot be performed while the vehicle is in motion. Be sure to stop your vehicle in a safe location and apply the parking brake, before attempting these operations.

- 1 **Turn the ignition key to the ACC or ON position.**  
The system turns on.
  - When turned on, the system displays the last mode screen that was displayed before the ignition key was turned off. For example, if the unit is in radio mode when ignition is turned off, it will remain in radio mode when ignition is turned back on.
- 2 **Press and hold the 🔇 button for at least 3 seconds to turn the power off.**
  - The unit can be turned on by pressing any button.
  - The X008AU/X008EU/INE-W957A/INE-W957E is a precision device. Careful handling of the unit should provide you with years of trouble-free operation.

## Turning the System On

With the Alpine system, when the ignition key is turned to ACC or ON, the opening screen will be automatically displayed.

- 1 When the system is used for the first time, the language selection menu is displayed. There are 24 languages to choose from. Touch [**▲**] or [**▼**] to scroll the list, and then touch the desired language.



- You can also scroll through lists by touching the screen and sliding your finger up and down.

- 2 Touch [**OK**].

The radio screen is displayed.

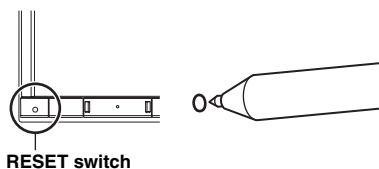
- Some of this unit's functions cannot be performed while the vehicle is in motion. Be sure to stop your vehicle in a safe location and apply the parking brake before attempting these operations.

## Initial System Start-Up

Be sure to press the RESET switch when using the unit for the first time, after changing the car battery, etc.

- 1 Turn off the unit power.

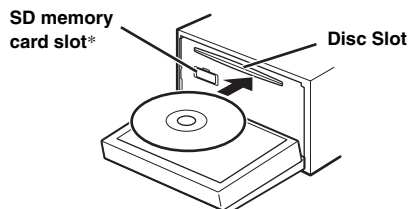
- 2 Press RESET switch with a ballpoint pen or similar pointed object.



## Inserting/Ejecting a Disc

### Inserting the Disc

- 1 Press [**▲**] (Eject).  
The Open/Tilt screen is displayed.
- 2 Touch [**▲ Disc**].
- 3 Insert the disc with the label side facing up.



Insert the disc until it is automatically pulled into the unit.  
The unit starts to play the disc.

- \* The SD memory card does not support Music/Video playback. For details on how to use SD memory cards, refer to "Navigation system OM".
- To remove the SD memory card, touch [**SD**].
- Insert the SD memory card into the slot until it is locked. If the SD memory card is not inserted properly, the monitor cannot be closed.

### Removing the Disc

- 1 Press [**▲**] (Eject).  
The Open/Tilt screen is displayed.
- 2 Touch [**▲ Disc**].  
The monitor will open. Then the disc is ejected.  
When the disc has been ejected part way, take it out.
  - Even if no disc is inserted, the monitor will open after touching [**▲ Disc**].
- 3 Touch [**Close**], or press [**▲**] (Eject).
  - If the disc does not eject after touching [**▲ Disc**], press and hold [**▲**] (Eject) for at least 5 seconds.
  - Do not apply shock to the monitor when it is open as it may result in malfunction of the unit.
  - The monitor will stop at the set tilt angle when closing.

#### CAUTION

Keep hands (or any other object) away from the monitor while it is opening or closing to avoid damage or injury. The back of the monitor tends to become very warm under normal operating conditions. This is not a malfunction, but care should be taken to avoid prolonged contact with it.



## Adjusting the Screen Viewing Angle

Adjust the screen's angle for better visibility.

### 1 Press **▲** (Eject).

The Open/Tilt screen is displayed.

### 2 Touch [**▲ Up**] or [**▼ Down**] of "Tilt" to adjust the desired screen angle.

The screen angle can be adjusted in 5 stages.

### 3 Touch [**×**] to return to the normal mode.

- The screen colour will vary when viewed at certain angles. Adjust the screen angle for the best viewing position.
- If the voltage of the vehicle's battery power is low, the screen may blink when the screen angle is changed. This is normal and not a malfunction.

## Adjusting the Volume

**Adjust the volume by pressing **▼** or **▲**.**

Volume decreases/increases continuously by pressing and holding **▼** or **▲**.

Volume: 0 - 35

## Lowering Volume Quickly

Activating the Audio Mute function will instantly lower the volume level by 20 dB.

### 1 Press **MUTE** to activate the **MUTE** mode.

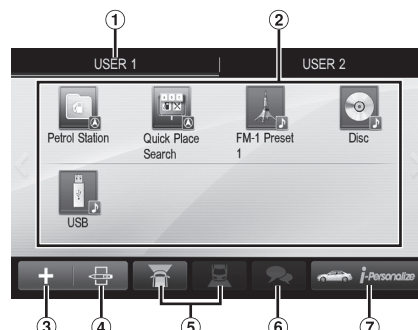
The audio level will decrease by about 20 dB.

### 2 Pressing **MUTE** again will bring the audio back to its previous level.

## Common Operations

### Using My Favourites

#### Display example of My Favourites screen



- ① User name: Displays the name of the user
- ② My Favourites icon: Touching an icon on My Favourites screen will switch to the screen for the selected application
- ③ Add button: Use to add (register) My Favourites icons (page 22)
- ④ Edit button: Use to edit My Favourites (page 22)
- ⑤ Camera button: Use to display the camera image (page 23)
- ⑥ Notification List button: Use to display the Notification List from Facebook in the connected Smartphone via this unit (page 25)
- ⑦ i-Personalize button: Use to configure the i-Personalize Setup (page 23)

## User Registration

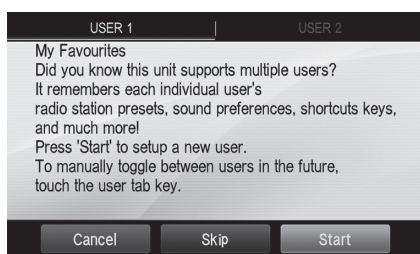
You can register up to two users. Configure the User1 and User2 settings for each user.

### 1 Press the ★ (My Favourites) button.

The My Favourites screen is displayed.

- You cannot access My Favourites screen while driving.

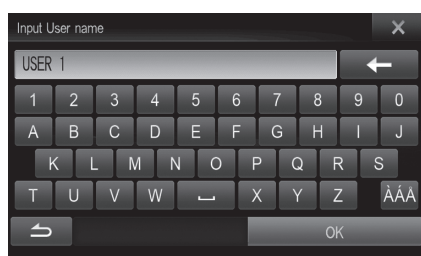
### 2 Touch [Start].



The user name input screen for the first user is displayed.

- After registering the first user, touch [USER2] to access to USER2's registration screen.
- Touching [Skip] registers the user name as "USER1" or "USER2" and no BLUETOOTH device is registered. In this case, the users will not be switched automatically.
- Touching [Cancel] or pressing the ★ (My Favourites) button returns to the original screen without registering a user.

### 3 Input the user name from the keypad and touch [OK].



The BLUETOOTH Device Setup screen is displayed.

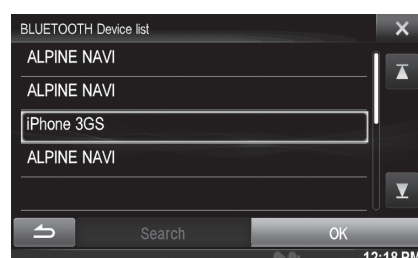
- Touch [←] to edit the name.  
For details of how to input characters from the keypad, refer to "How to Input Characters and Numbers (Keypad)" (page 27).

### 4 Touch [Link], then touch [OK].

The BLUETOOTH Device List is displayed.

- The BLUETOOTH devices registered here are used to automatically identify the user.  
Also, a cellular phone can be used as a hands-free phone.  
For details, see "BLUETOOTH Setting" (page 56).
- Touching [Do not Link] exits user registration without registering a BLUETOOTH device.

### 5 Touch [Search].

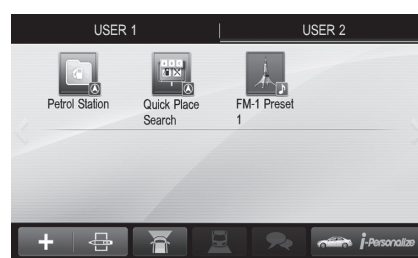


The system starts searching for BLUETOOTH devices. When the search is completed, the BLUETOOTH Device List is displayed.

- Set the BLUETOOTH setting on the preregistered BLUETOOTH device side to [ON].

### 6 Touch a registered BLUETOOTH device and touch [OK].

My Favourites screen for USER1 or USER2 is displayed.



- You can edit My Favourites icons.  
For details of how to add, edit, delete or set My Favourites icons, refer to "Adding My Favourites" (page 22).

### 7 Press the ★ (My Favourites) button.

The My Favourites screen is exited and the display returns to the original screen.

# Setting My Favourites

Configure the My Favourites settings.

**Press the ★ (My Favourites) button.**

My Favourites screen for USER1 is displayed.

- You cannot access My Favourites screen while driving.
- [ ] and [ ] are not available while driving.
- To configure My Favourites settings for USER2, touch [USER2]. The My Favourites screen is displayed.

## Adding My Favourites

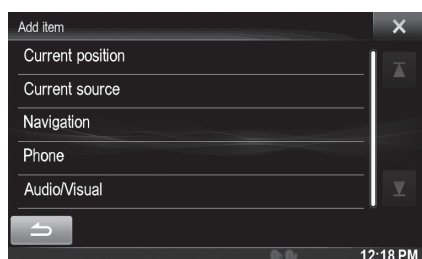
You can register up to 80 My Favourites for each user.

You cannot, however, register the same items (categories).

### 1 Touch [ ].

The addition items (categories) are displayed.

### 2 Touch the desired addition item (category).



**Current position** : Registers your current position in My Favourites

**Current source** : Registers the audio source currently playing in My Favourites

- During Radio, CD, etc., main screen, you can directly register the playing source to My Favourites by touching [ ]. The [ ] will not display when the current source is already registered.

**Navigation** : Registers the destination search category or nearby place search category in My Favourites

[Specific Place] : You can display the places registered in My Favourites and set your destination.

Search for a place registered in My Favourites by Address/Find Place/Address Book/History, then touch Add.

[Quick Place search] : Displays the address search keypad

[Help Nearby] : Displays the nearby search screen

[POI category] : Displays the selected POI category list

- For details of navigation operations, refer to "Navigation System OM".

**Phone** : Lets you register phone numbers stored in the phonebook in My Favourites for shortcut dialing.

Select a name or phone number from the Phonebook list and touch [Add].

- Touch [◀] or [▶] to switch phone numbers.
- You can only select PHONE when a mobile phone is connected.

**Audio/Visual** : Lets you switch directly to an audio source

[Radio] :

You can register presets No. 1-6 in FM1/FM2/AM.

Select presets No. 1-6 from FM1 preset/FM2 preset/AM preset.

[Disc]/[USB/iPod]/[HDMI]/[CarMode]/[MirrorMode]/[Pandora\*]/[BLUETOOTH Pandora\*]/[Aux-1]/[Aux-2]/[Aux-3]/[BLUETOOTH Audio] : You can switch directly to any of these audio sources.

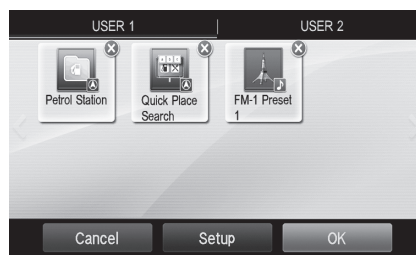
\* X008AU/INE-W957A only.

## Editing My Favourites

You can delete names in My Favourites or change the layout.

**Touch [ ].**

"⊗" appears and the mode switches to the Edit mode.



- Touching [Cancel] returns to the previous screen without executing any changes.

### Changing the name

#### 1 Touch the icon you want to change

The Edit Text screen (Keypad) is displayed.

#### 2 Enter the name and touch [OK]

The mode returns to the Edit mode.

#### 3 Touch [OK].

The name is changed.

### Deleting Icons

#### 1 Touch "⊗" by the icon you want to delete

The confirmation message is displayed.

#### 2 Touch [OK].

The mode returns to the Edit mode.

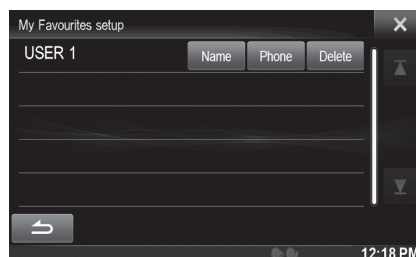
#### 3 Touch [OK].

### My Favourites setup

You can change or delete the current registered user name or change the registered phone number.

**Touch [Setup].**

The My Favourites Setup screen is displayed.



## ■ Changing the User Name

**1 Touch the [Name] of the current user.**  
The Input User Name screen (Keypad) is displayed.

**2 Input the name and touch [OK].**

The user name is changed.

- For details of how to input characters using the keypad, refer to “How to Input Characters and Numbers (Keypad)” (page 27).

## ■ Changing a BLUETOOTH device

You can change the BLUETOOTH devices associated with the user.

**1 Touch the [Phone].**

The BLUETOOTH Device Setup screen is displayed.

**2 Touch [Link], then touch [OK].**

The BLUETOOTH Device list is displayed.

- The BLUETOOTH device set by User Registration is highlighted. For detailed settings, touch [Search].

**3 Select the device you want to change and touch [OK].**

The device is changed.

## ■ Deleting current Registered User

**1 Touch [Delete].**

The confirmation message is displayed.

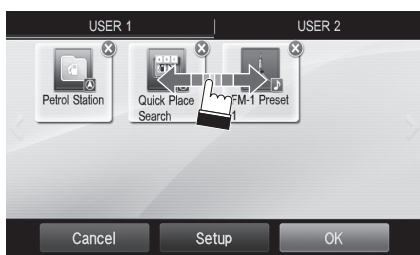
**2 Touch [OK].**

- When the registered user is deleted, all the items affected by switching users are returned to the default settings.

## Changing the Layout

You can change the layout of the shortcut keys.

**1 Drag and drop the icon to the desired location.**



**2 Touch [OK].**

USER1 | USER2

## Displaying the Camera Image

When a separately purchased camera is connected to the system, you can display the camera image.

**Touch [ ] or [ ].**

The camera image is displayed.

- For details of camera operations, refer to “Camera Operation (Optional)” (page 70).
- When the front camera (direct camera) and rear camera or side camera (AUX camera) are connected simultaneously, the screen for selecting which camera image to display appears.
- Depending on the setting, the camera button may not be displayed. For details, refer to “Setting the Camera Input” (page 58).

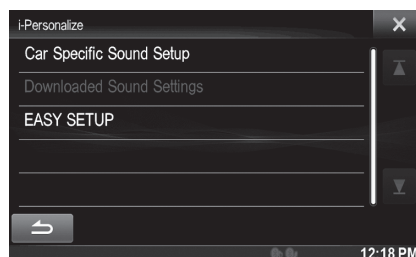
## i-Personalize Setup

You can configure the audio settings by car type.

- You cannot access to i-Personalize screen while driving.

**Touch [i-Personalize]\*.**

The i-Personalize Setup screen is displayed.



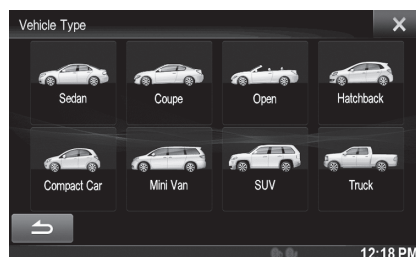
- \* This item cannot be adjusted when External AP is set to On or BASS ENGINE SQ mode is selected, refer to “Setting the External Audio Processor On/Off” (page 45) / “BASS ENGINE SQ” mode (page 24).

## Car Specific Sound Setup

You can set the best audio environment for your car.

**1 Touch [Car Specific Sound Setup].**

The vehicle type selection screen is displayed.



**2 Touch the relevant Vehicle type.**

- The selected Vehicle type is reflected in the “i-Personalize” symbol on My Favourites screen.

**3 Touch the position of the driver’s seat.**

**4 Touch the size of the front speaker.**

**5 Select whether or not there is a tweeter.**

**6 Select the installation position of the rear speaker.**  
If you select "No rear speaker", you cannot adjust the rear speaker in Time Correction/X-OVER in sound setup.

**7 Select whether or not there is a subwoofer.**  
If you select "No", you cannot adjust the subwoofer level/subwoofer phase in sound setup.

**8 Select the material of the car seats.**  
The settings confirmation screen is displayed.  

- If the car seats are made of both leather and fabric, select [Half leather].

**9 Check the settings and touch [OK].**



- If Preset3 was already saved for Time Correction/X-OVER/ Parametric EQ, the data will be overwritten.
- The Easy sound settings are reflected in the following Audio Setup items.

Setting the MX (Media Xpander)

- Adjusting the Parametric Equalizer Curve (Parametric EQ)
- Adjusting the Time Correction (Time Correction)
- Adjusting the Crossover Settings (X-OVER) (only when Subwoofer is set to [On])

The Equalizer Presets settings are disabled.

## Downloaded Sound Settings

Using a USB memory device, the sound settings downloaded from the ALPINE website can be used to configure Time Correction, X-OVER and Parametric EQ settings.

**Setting item: Downloaded Sound Settings**

The file name of download data shall be "A\_U\*\*\*\*.MP3".

A\_U\*\*\*\*.MP3

Extender (fixed)  
Identifier (alphabet or number  
5 letters maximum)  
Header (fixed)

- Save the setting data in the root folder.
- For details about procedures of download, see ALPINE's web site.

**1 Touch [Downloaded Sound Settings].**  
Setting data files are displayed in a list with a maximum of 5 items.

**2 Touch the desired file.**

**3 Touch [OK].**  
The downloaded setting values are set as the Time Correction/X-OVER/Parametric EQ settings, and at the same time saved as Preset3, respectively.

- When no downloaded file is detected in the connected USB memory, the "Downloaded Sound Settings" function is not available.

- If Preset3 was already saved for Time Correction/X-OVER/ Parametric EQ, the data will be overwritten.

## Easy Setup

This unit provides various vehicle types of the custom settings. You can select the vehicle type to be easily fit your audio settings.

**1 Touch [EASY SETUP].**  
The EASY SETUP screen is displayed.

**2 Touch the desired car type.**

- This unit provides only a part of representative vehicle types' setting values. If your car doesn't belong to these types, please complete the audio settings by "Car Specific Sound Setup" or "Downloaded Sound Settings" (pages 23 to 24).

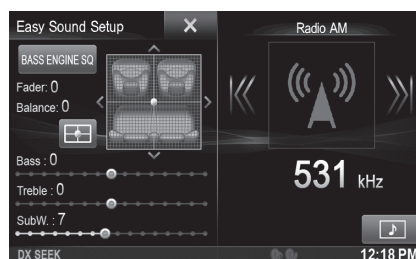
## Easy Sound Setup mode/BASS ENGINE SQ mode

During normal source play mode, you can activate Easy Sound Setup mode by pressing and holding /AUDIO for at least 3 seconds. Fader/Balance/Bass level/Treble level/Subwoofer level and BASS ENGINE SQ can be adjusted in this mode.

### Easy Sound Setup mode

Adjust the Fader/Balance/Bass level/Treble level.

### Display example for Easy Sound Setup screen



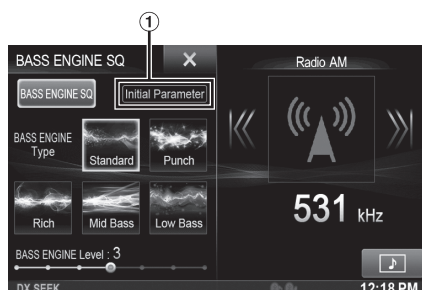
- You can choose to display this menu on the left or right of the screen. For details, refer to "Setting the Easy Sound Setup Position" on page 52.
- Subwoofer level is not adjustable when SubW. is Off. (Page 46)
- The Fader/Balance setting is reflected to "Setting the Balance/ Fader" (page 46).
- In BASS ENGINE SQ mode, touch [BASS ENGINE SQ] to switch to Easy Sound Setup screen.

### BASS ENGINE SQ mode

With the BASS ENGINE SQ function on this unit, several parameters affecting Bass performance are adjusted simultaneously. The Bass Level adjustment varies these parameters uniformly for optimum Bass effect at different levels.

Touch **[BASS ENGINE SQ]** to switch to **BASS ENGINE SQ** mode.

## ■ Display example for BASS ENGINE SQ screen



① Display the current BASS ENGINE SQ parameter.

### **BASS ENGINE SQ:**

Adjust the relevant Bass parameters uniformly and automatically.

### **Easy Sound Setup:**

Adjust each audio effect setting separately and manually.

- You can set this item via TuneIt App on a Smartphone. Refer to “Adjusting the sound via the Smartphone” on page 25.

## ■ USER1/USER2

### **Select the Desired BASS ENGINE Type**

You can select your preferable BASS ENGINE type within Standard (Initial setting)/Punch/Rich/Mid Bass/Low Bass.

## ■ USER1/USER2

### **Adjusting the BASS ENGINE Level**

With BASS ENGINE SQ ON, adjusting the Bass Level uniformly effects various sound parameters for optimum Bass effect.

- Adjustable only when Defeat is Off.
- The Bass parameters affected contain Bass Level, Treble Level, EQ PRESETS, Parametric EQ, SUBWOOFER (when set this item via TuneIt App), Subwoofer Level, Media Xpander, X-OVER, Car Specific Sound Setup and Download Sound Setting. These items are set automatically in BASS ENGINE SQ mode and cannot be adjusted separately.
- From Level 0 to Level 6, the effect of BASS ENGINE SQ increases level by level.

#### **About Setup when the external power amplifier is connected.**

In order to optimize the BASS ENGINE SQ, we recommend the following power amplifier setup.

After setting up, you can adjust the BASS ENGINE SQ Level according to the music.

- Set gain of the power amplifier to “MIN”.
- Set the Crossover Mode Sector switch to “OFF”.
- Set the BASS ENGINE SQ of this unit to “ON”, and the BASS ENGINE Level to “+3”.
- Play a song of the genre you frequently listen to, and adjust gain of the power amplifier.

## Applying TuneIt

This unit’s sound tuning is programmable from a connected Smartphone. It is also possible to download specific parameters for certain vehicles from Alpine’s TuneIt database stored in the Cloud. Using the TuneIt App, customized parameters can also be uploaded for others to share and rate.

Through this unit, it is also possible to receive and respond to information from Alpine’s Social Network Service (SNS) available through the connected Smartphone.

The installed TuneIt App should be launched on the Smartphone before connection to the head unit.

TuneIt, is downloadable from Apple’s App Store; the Android user can download it from Google Play. For details, consult your Alpine dealer.

Before these operations, set TuneIt to USB (iPhone) or BT (Android) depending on the connected Smartphone. For details, refer to “Setting the Communication Mode with a Smartphone” on page 55.

- The application programme and related specifications and data may be deleted or terminated without notice.
- Some TuneIt functions may not be available if the Smartphone is not in a service area or receives no signal.

## Adjusting the sound via the Smartphone

After setting the above procedure, you can adjust the unit’s sound function on the Smartphone.

- 1 Make sure the unit is powered on.**
- 2 Launch the TuneIt App on the Smartphone. Adjust the unit’s sound accordingly on the Smartphone.**

- You cannot adjust the sound via Smartphone when External AP is set to On. Refer to “Setting the External Audio Processor On/Off” (page 45).
- Volume level cannot be adjusted via the Smartphone.
- The setting cannot be done on both the Smartphone and this unit at the same time. While the sound function of this unit is set via the Smartphone, sound function settings on X008AU/X008EU/INE-W957A/INE-W957E will be displayed as “Sound APP Connected”.
- In some situations, such as the unit is powered off or during a call, etc., sound setting cannot be done via the Smartphone.
- This function may not be available depending on the paired Smartphone.
- Please obey all local traffic laws while using this function.

## Facebook Notification Function

Some functions may be available in a future version of TuneIt.

- Depending on the paired Smartphone, the following functions may not be available even though the TuneIt version is updated.
- Text information and Facebook screen are not displayed while driving.



## Receiving Notification

When the Smartphone connected to this unit receives notification from Facebook, the incoming message pops up (depending on the Tunelt settings on the phone).

### ■ Display example for Notification incoming screen



- ① Poster's picture: Display poster's picture. (Provided from Tunelt App on Smartphone, displayed with a default image when invalid.) Touch here to switch to Facebook screen.
- ② Poster's name: Display poster's name. (Provided from Tunelt App on Smartphone, not displayed when invalid.) Touching here can also switch to Facebook screen.
- ③ Notification List button: Touch to switch to Notification List screen.
- ④ Text To Speech play/stop button: Touch to play received notification (Depending on the status, operation may not be available). During play mode, touch [■] to stop play.
- ⑤ Like button: For "Like" operation. (Valid when Wall Posts or Comments is received)
- ⑥ Close button: Close the notification screen.

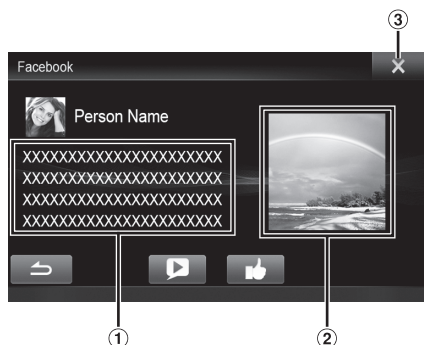
**Touch the desired button to operate.**

- Touching Audio/Video screen will close the notification screen.
- While you play a Notification by TTS during iPod video mode, the TTS volume is the same as iPod video source. And adjust the TTS volume will reflect to iPod video source.
- While you play a Notification by TTS during iPod video mode, the iPod VIDEO extension cable should be connected correctly. Otherwise, you cannot hear the TTS. On how to connect an iPod/iPhone, refer to "Connection of an iPod/iPhone" (page 104).
- The TTS volume is output via the car's front right and left speakers.

## Displaying Facebook Screen

During Notification incoming or Notification List screen, you can switch to Facebook screen.

### ■ Display example for Facebook screen



- ① A part content of message
- ② Poster's photo
- ③ Close button: Close the Facebook screen.

## Touch Poster's picture or Poster's name to switch to Facebook screen.

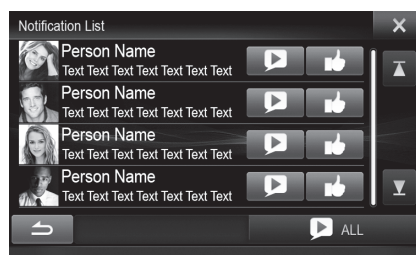
The details information of Notification is displayed.

- Touch [↩] to return to previous screen.
- Depending on the status, contents of message and photo may not be displayed.
- A new received Notification prompt will last for 15 seconds. If there is no operation within 15 seconds, the unit will return to normal mode.
- In some situations, such as the unit is powered off or during a call, etc., Notification of the Smartphone will not be prompted by this unit.

## Displaying Notification List

You can view the received Notification from Facebook in the connected Smartphone via this unit.

### ■ Display example for Notification List screen



## 1 Press the ★ (My Favourites) button.

My Favourites screen for User1 or User2 is displayed.

## 2 Touch [📢] (Notification List icon).

The received Notification will be displayed according to when it was posted.

## 3 Then operate it the same as "Receiving Notification".

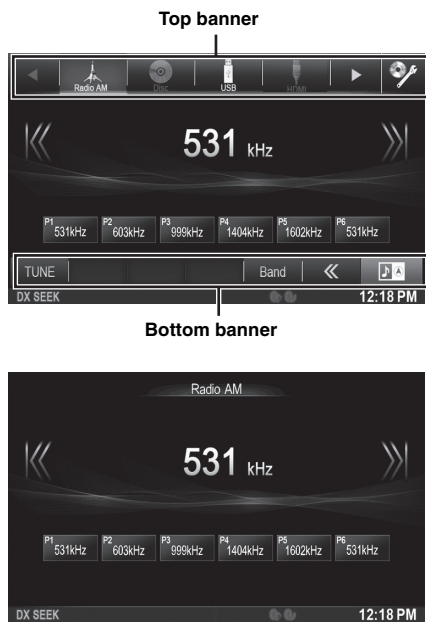
- Touch [▶ ALL]/[■ ALL] to play/stop all Notifications.
- Touch [↩] to return to My Favourites screen.
- You can also access to Notification List screen by touching [≡] on Notification incoming screen. However, [↩] will not be displayed in Notification List.
- Depending on the status, some functions may not be available.
- When there is no Notification, "No Notifications." will be displayed.
- The displayable amount of the Notification list depends on the connected Smartphone.





## Top banner and Bottom banner Fade Out Setting

When “Top/Bottom Banner Fade Out” is set to ON, the Top banner and Bottom banner on the Audio/Visual Playback screen fade out after 5 seconds if no operation is performed. To display the keys again, touch the middle of the screen.



- For details of how to set Top/Bottom Banner Fade Out, refer to “Setting Top banner and Bottom banner Display” (page 42).

## Switching Sources

During audio/visual playback, press the button or touch a source button in the top banner to switch to the desired source.

### ■ Switching Sources Using the Button

During audio/visual playback, press the button repeatedly to switch to the desired source.

Radio → Disc\*<sup>1</sup> → USB/iPod\*<sup>1</sup> → HDMI\*<sup>1</sup> → CarMode\*<sup>2</sup> → MirrorMode\*<sup>2</sup> → PANDORA\*<sup>3</sup> (X008AU/INE-W957A only) → PANDORA (BLUETOOTH)\*<sup>3</sup> (X008AU/INE-W957A only) → AUX-1\*<sup>4</sup> → AUX-2\*<sup>4</sup> → AUX-3\*<sup>5</sup> → BLUETOOTH-AUDIO\*<sup>1</sup> → Radio...

\*<sup>1</sup> When no disc is inserted or no USB memory/iPod/HDMI device/Smartphone/BLUETOOTH compatible device is connected, this option is not available.

\*<sup>2</sup> When no smartphone with applications for MirrorLink is connected, this option is not available.

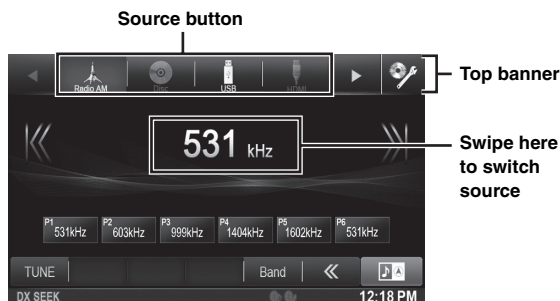
\*<sup>3</sup> When BLUETOOTH Pandora is set to “Off”, this option is not available. (Page 56)

\*<sup>4</sup> When AUX In is set to “Off”, this option is not available. (Page 54)

\*<sup>5</sup> When AUX3 In Sel. is set to “iPod Video”, this option is not available. (Page 55)

### ■ Switching Sources Using the Top banner

Touch the source button for the Top banner at the top of the Audio/Visual Playback screen and select the desired source.



If the source button is hidden, touch [◀] [▶].

- When “Source Layout Setting” (page 51) is set to “On”, you can switch sources by swiping from the middle of the marked area from right to left or from left to right.
- The Source display order can be changed. For details, refer to “Customizing the Source Banner” (page 52).

## Screen Off Function

This mode is useful if you feel the unit’s display is too bright at night. To cancel Screen OFF mode, touch the screen or press any button.

- Screen OFF mode is cancelled when the power or ACC is turned off.
- When the gear lever is shifted to the reverse (R) position while the rear camera is connected, the rear camera image is displayed.
- When a call is received while a BLUETOOTH device is connected, the incoming call screen is displayed.

## Rear Entertainment Function

The rear entertainment function independently routes different sources to the front and the rear inside a car. For example, while listening to the radio or other audio source in the front, DVD can be enjoyed in the rear with the optional rear monitor and headphones.

**1 Press the  button.**

**2 Touch [Rear]\* of Top banner.**

Rear source Select display appears.

\* Displayed only when RSE is On (page 55).

• Touching [X] on the Rear selection screen will change to the main source screen.

**3 Touch the desired visual source (such as auxiliary input, built-in DVD) to select.**

- Touch [OFF] to cancel the rear entertainment function.
- When the “Setting the AUX Mode” (page 54) is set to Off, the auxiliary source is not displayed.
- Depending on the status, some Rear source items may not be available in some case. (For example, when there is no DVD disc inserted on this unit, you cannot set “Disc” as Rear source.)
- Touch [AUTO] to set the rear source the same as the X008AU/X008EU/INE-W957A/INE-W957E’s playing visual source.
- When iPhone Pandora® source is selected on X008AU/X008EU/INE-W957A/INE-W957E, you cannot select iPod Video or enjoy iPod Video on rear monitor.
- Select iPod audio on X008AU/X008EU/INE-W957A/INE-W957E may impact the iPod video playing on the rear monitor.
- You cannot make the aux1 and aux2 to play on the main unit and rear monitor at the same time.

## Switching the Dual Screen Display

When you touch [MODE] on the dual screen during video playback, the screen size selection message is displayed.

### ■ Dual Wide (Initial setting)



### ■ Dual Full



### ■ Full Screen



## Touch operation

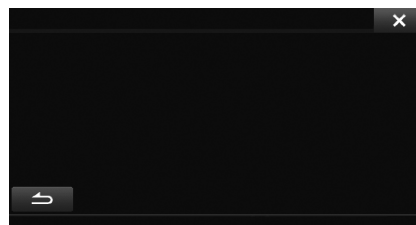
You can operate the system by using the touch panel on the screen.

- Be sure to touch the onscreen button lightly with the pad of your finger to protect the display.
- If you touch a button and there is no reaction, remove your finger from the display once, and try again.
- Onscreen buttons that cannot be operated appear dull in colour.

### Common onscreen buttons

[↶]: Returns to the previous screen. Depending on the function, this button may cancel the operations performed on the screen.

[X]: Closes the window.

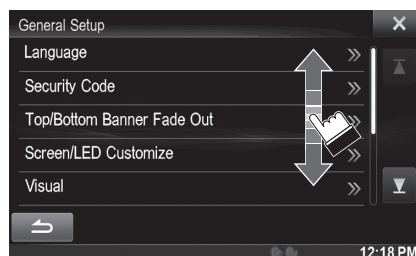


## Selecting an Item in a List

To scroll through a list, perform the following operations.

**Touch the screen and slide your finger up and down.**

The screen will scroll along with your finger movement. Also, you can touch [▲] and [▼].



- After touching the screen, move your finger away from the screen before dragging and that item will be selected.

# About the Indicator Display

The Indicator Bar at the bottom of the screen displays various types of information, like the current time.



- ① The display will differ depending on the source. For details, refer to the display example of each source.
- ② Lights up when connected to a BLUETOOTH compatible device. (Does not display when connection is set to OFF.)
  - : BLUETOOTH connection to audio device
  - : BLUETOOTH connection to Hands Free PhoneBlinks while reconnecting.
- ③ Indicates the battery level of the connected BLUETOOTH device.

Battery Level	No Battery	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
Icon				

This may not be displayed depending on the connected BLUETOOTH device.

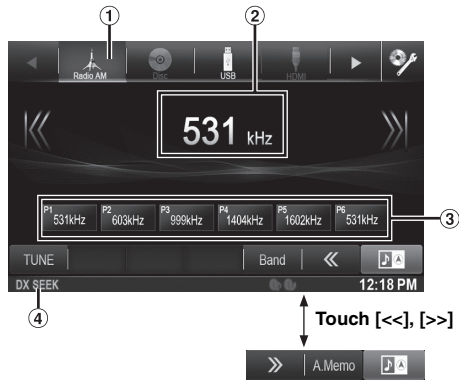
- ④ Indicates the signal strength level of the connected BLUETOOTH compatible device. Displayed when BLUETOOTH setting is ON.

0	1	2	3	No Service

- ⑤ The clock display  
You can switch between the 12 hour display and 24 hour display options.  
For details of the clock display settings, refer to "Navigation System OM".

# Radio

## ■ Display example for Radio main screen



- ① Band display
- ② Frequency display
- ③ Preset button
- ④ SEEK mode

# Listening to the Radio

- Press the button.**
- Touch [Radio] of Top banner.**  
The radio mode is activated and the display changes to the Radio mode screen.
  - The display content varies depending on the last band selected. ([RadioFM1], etc.)
- Touch [Band] of Bottom banner to select the desired radio band.**  
Each touch changes the bands as follows:  
FM-1 → FM-2 → AM → FM-1
- Touch [TUNE] to select the tuning mode.**  
DX SEEK      Local SEEK      MANUAL  
K<<   K>>      K<<   K>>      <<   >>
  - There are two modes you can select for auto tuning, DX and Local:
    - DX (Distance) mode;  
Both strong and weak stations will be tuned in.
    - Local mode;  
Only strong stations will be tuned in.  
The initial setting is DX.
- Touch [K<<], [K>>] or [K<<], [K>>] to change the radio frequency up or down respectively.**  
In manual mode, touch and hold to change the frequency continuously.

## Presetting Stations Manually

- 1 **Tune in a desired radio station you wish to store in the preset memory by manual or automatic seek tuning.**
  - 2 **Touch and hold any one of the preset buttons for at least 2 seconds.**  
The selected station is stored.
  - 3 **Repeat the procedure to store up to 5 other stations onto the same band.**  
To use this procedure for other bands, simply select the desired band and repeat the procedure.  
  
A total of 18 stations can be stored in the preset memory (6 stations for each band; FM1, FM2 or AM).
- If a preset memory has already been set in the same preset number, it will be cleared and the new station will be memorized.

## Presetting Stations Automatically

The tuner can automatically seek and store 6 strong stations in the selected band in order of signal strength.

### After selecting the desired band, touch [A.Memo] of Bottom banner.

The tuner automatically seeks and stores 6 strong stations into the preset buttons in order of signal strength.  
When automatic storing has completed, the station stored in the preset 1 is selected.

If [A.Memo] is not displayed, touch [<<] or [>>] in the bottom banner to display [A.Memo].

- If no stations are stored, the tuner will return to the original station you were listening to before the automatic storing procedure began.
- You can cancel this process by touching [A.Memo] while the tuner is automatically seeking stations. Cancelling will return the tuner preset to the previous setting.

## Tuning to Preset Stations

You can tune in the preset stations in memory on either band using its preset number.

- 1 **Touch [Band] of Bottom banner repeatedly until the desired band is displayed.**
- 2 **Touch any one of the preset buttons that has a station stored to it.**  
The preset station is received.

## CD/MP3/WMA/AAC

### ■ Display example for MP3/WMA/AAC main screen

#### Info mode



- ① Song title
- ② Artist title
- ③ Album title
- ④ Current song no./Total song no.
- ⑤ Elapsed time

- If there is no CD text, the message "No Text" appears.

### ■ About creating a tag information library

You can scan music files in a disc and create a library of tag information in this unit. Library creation starts when the disc is inserted. The time it takes to create the library depends on the number of songs/files recorded in the disc, but it may take several minutes.

#### About operations during library creation

- Search function does not work properly while a library is being created.
- The order in which songs are played during library creation may differ from the order in the disc.

## Playback

- 1 **Press the button.**
- 2 **Touch [Disc] of Top banner.**  
The display shows the Disc mode screen.  
  
When a disc is inserted into the disc slot of this unit, with the label side facing up, the unit starts playback of the disc.
- 3 **Touch [K<] or [K>] to select the desired track (file).**  
**Returning to the beginning of the current (or previous) track (file):**  
Touch [K<].  
**Fast reverse :**  
Touch and hold [K<].  
**Advancing to the beginning of the next track (file) :**  
Touch [K>].  
**Fast forward :**  
Touch and hold [K>].
- 4 **To pause playback, touch [P] / [P].**  
[P] is displayed in the middle of the screen.  
Touch [P] again or touch [P] in the middle of the screen to start playback.

- The X008AU/X008EU/INE-W957A/INE-W957E can play back MP3/WMA/AAC files saved to CD or DVD. Use a format compliant with this unit.  
For further information about playing or storing MP3/WMA/AAC files, refer to pages 33 and 34 before using the unit.
- Any file protected by DRM (Digital Rights Management) copy protection, cannot be played back on this unit.
- If a disc contains both audio data and MP3/WMA/AAC data, this unit plays back only the audio data.
- The track display for CD audio data playback shows the track numbers recorded on the disc.
- If an MP3/WMA/AAC disc with many files and folders is played, it may take longer than normal to start playback.
- The playback time may not be correctly displayed when a VBR (Variable Bit Rate) recorded file is played back.

## Repeat Play

### Touch [↺] to repeatedly play back.

The tracks (files) will be played repeatedly.

The repeat mode switches every time the button is touched.

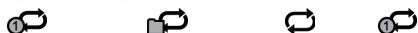
CD:

Repeat → (OFF) → Repeat



MP3/WMA/AAC:

Repeat → Repeat Folder\* → (OFF) → Repeat



\* Only files in a folder are repeatedly played back.

- If the Repeat Play mode is activated during M.I.X. playback, the M.I.X. mode will be cancelled.

## M.I.X. (Random Play)

### Touch [⌂] during playback.

The tracks (files) on the disc will be played back in a random sequence.

The M.I.X. mode switches every time [⌂] is touched.

CD:

M.I.X. → (OFF) → M.I.X.



MP3/WMA/AAC:

M.I.X. Folder\* → (OFF) → M.I.X. Folder\*



\* Only files in a folder are played back in random sequence.

- If the M.I.X. mode is activated during Repeat playback, the Repeat Play mode will be cancelled.
- If you select a track by using the search mode, the M.I.X. play mode will be cancelled.

## Selecting Folders (Concerning MP3/WMA/AAC)

Touch [◀■] or [■▶] of Bottom banner to select the folder.

## Searching from CD Text

### 1 Touch [🔍 (Search)] of Bottom banner during playback.

The CD text search screen is displayed.

### 2 Touch the selected track name.

The selected track will be played back.

- For details on how to scroll through the list, refer to “Selecting an Item in a List” (page 29).

## File/Folder Name Search (Concerning MP3/WMA/AAC)

### 1 Touch [🔍 (Search)] of Bottom banner during playback.

The search mode is activated.

### 2 Touch [Music].

The folder name list screen is displayed.

### Folder Name Search mode

### 3 Touch [▶] in the desired folder.

The first file in the selected folder is played back.

### File Name Search mode

### 3 Touch the desired folder name.

The File name of the selected folder is displayed.

### 4 Touch the desired file name.

The selected file is played back.

- To return to the previous hierarchy, touch [⏮].
- For details on how to scroll through the list, refer to “Selecting an Item in a List” (page 29).
- After selecting a folder via a Folder name search, touch [☰] on the main screen to display the folder search screen.
- After selecting a file via a File name search, touch [☰] on the main screen to display the file search screen.

# About MP3/WMA/AAC

## CAUTION

*Except for private use, duplicating audio data (including MP3/WMA/AAC data) or distributing, transferring, or copying it, whether for free or for a fee, without permission of the copyright holder is strictly prohibited by the Copyright Act and by international treaty.*

## What is MP3?

MP3, whose official name is "MPEG Audio Layer 3", is a compression standard prescribed by the ISO, the International Standardization Organization and MPEG which is a joint activity institution of the IEC.

MP3 files contain compressed audio data. MP3 encoding is capable of compressing audio data at extremely high ratios, reducing the size of music files to as much as one-tenth their original size. This is achieved while still maintaining near CD quality. The MP3 format realises such high compression ratios by eliminating the sounds that are either inaudible to the human ear or masked by other sounds.

## What is WMA?

WMA, or "Windows Media™ Audio", is compressed audio data. WMA is similar to MP3 audio data.

## What is AAC?

AAC is the abbreviation for "Advanced Audio Coding", and is a basic format of audio compression used by MPEG2 or MPEG4.

## Method for creating MP3/WMA/AAC files

Audio data is compressed using software with MP3/WMA/AAC codecs. For details on creating MP3/WMA/AAC files, refer to the user's manual for that software.

MP3/WMA/AAC files that are playable on this device have the file extensions.

MP3: ".mp3"

WMA: ".wma" (ver. 7.x, 8.x, 9.x are supported)

AAC: ".m4a"

WMA is not supported for the following files, Windows Media Audio Professional, Windows Media Audio 9 Voice or Windows Media Audio 9 Pro Lossless.

There are many different versions of the AAC format. Confirm that the software being used conforms to the acceptable formats listed above. It's possible that the format may be unplayable even though the extension is valid. Playback of AAC files encoded by iTunes is supported.

## Supported playback sampling rates and bit rates

### MP3

Sampling rates: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz, 24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz, 12 kHz, 11.025 kHz, 8 kHz

Bit rates: 8 - 320 kbps

### WMA

Sampling rates: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz, 11.025 kHz, 8 kHz

Bit rates: 48 - 320 kbps

### AAC

Sampling rates: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz, 24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz, 12 kHz, 11.025 kHz, 8 kHz

Bit rates: 16 - 320 kbps

This device may not play back correctly depending on sampling rates.

## ID3 tags/WMA tags

This device supports ID3 tag v1.0, v1.1, v2.2, v2.3, v2.4, and WMA tag Ver.1.x. If tag data is in an MP3/WMA/AAC file, this device can display the title (track title), artist name, and album name ID3 tag/WMA tag data (maximum 64 characters).

For non-supported characters, "?" is displayed.

The number of characters may be limited, or not correctly displayed, depending on the tag information.

## Playing back MP3/WMA/AAC

MP3/WMA/AAC files are prepared, then written to a CD-R, CD-RW (DVD-R/DVD-RW/DVD+R/DVD+RW) using CD-R writing software and USB memory.

- Maximum numbers of playable files/folders  
Disc: 1,000 files/folders (including Root Folder/DivX® file)  
USB memory: 10,000 files/folders (including Root Folder/DivX® file)
- Largest playable file size: 512 MB

Playback may not be performed if a disc exceeds the limitations described above.

If a file/folder name is long, the maximum possible number of files may decrease.

- Both Audio and Video files are counted if their formats are playable on this unit.

## Media supported

The media that this device can play back are CD-ROMs, CD-Rs, CD-RWs, DVD-Rs, DVD-RWs, DVD+Rs, DVD+RWs and USB memory.

## Corresponding File Systems

This device supports discs formatted with ISO9660 Level 1 or Level 2, UDF1.02 and UDF1.02(ISO Bridge).

Under the ISO9660 standard, there are some restrictions to remember.

The maximum nested folder depth is 8 (including the root directory). File names are limited to 256 characters (including the extension).

Valid characters for folder/file names are letters A-Z (all caps), numbers 0-9, and '\_' (underscore).

This device can play back discs in Joliet, Romeo, etc., and other standards that conform to ISO9660. However, sometimes the file names, folder names, etc., are not displayed correctly.

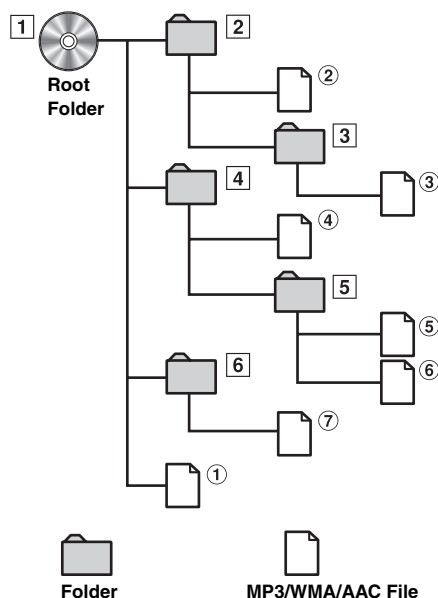
## Formats supported

This device supports CD-ROM Mode1, CD-ROM XA Mode2(Form1&2), Mixed Mode CD and Multi-Session.

This device cannot correctly play back discs recorded with Track At Once or packet writing.

## Order of files

Files are played back in the order that the writing software writes them to the disc. Therefore, the playback order may not be what's expected. Verify the writing order in the software's documentation. The playback order of the folders and files is as follows. (The following numbers may differ from actually displayed numbers.)



## Terminology

### Bit rate

This is the "sound" compression rate specified for encoding. The higher the bit rate, the higher the sound quality, but also the larger the files.

### Sampling rate

This value shows how many times per second the data is sampled (recorded). For example, music CDs use a sampling rate of 44.1 kHz, so the sound is sampled (recorded) 44,100 times per second. The higher the sampling rate, the higher the sound quality, but also the larger the volume of data.

### Encoding

Converting music CDs, WAVE (AIFF) files, and other sound files into the specified audio compression format.

### Tag

Song information such as track titles, artist names, album names, etc., written into MP3/WMA/AAC files.

### Root folder

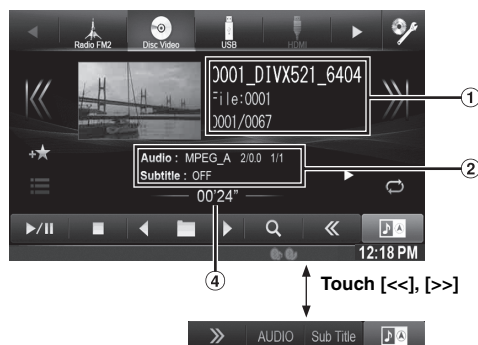
The root folder (or root directory) is found at the top of the file system. The root folder contains all folders and files. It is created automatically for all burned discs.

# DVD

## Display example for DVD Video main screen



## Display example for DivX® main screen



- ① Information display-1  
DVD-Video:  
Title name/Chapter No.  
DivX®:  
File name/File No./Current File No./Total File No. in Current Folder
- ② Information display-2  
DVD-Video:  
Audio signal output/Subtitle/Angle  
DivX®:  
Audio signal output/Subtitle
- ③ Total time for playing
- ④ Elapsed time

**Disc types that can be used for each heading are represented by the following marks.**



DVD Commercial Video discs (used for the distribution of movies, etc.) or a DVD-R/DVD-RW, DVD+R/DVD+RW recorded in a video mode can be used.



CD-R/CD-RW/DVD-R/DVD-RW/DVD+R/DVD+RW discs that are recorded in the DivX® mode can be used.



## The DVD operation screen display

Touch the screen while the DVD playback screen is displayed.

The DVD operation screen is displayed.



- The operation screen changes to the visual screen in the DVD mode for 5 seconds after an operation has been performed.
- If you try to activate the DVD while driving, the display will show the warning-Picture off for your safety.
- Some operations cannot be carried out depending on the disc or playback screen.

## Playing a Disc

DVD-V

DivX

### ⚠ WARNING

It is dangerous for the driver to watch the DVD/TV/Video while driving the vehicle. The driver may be distracted from looking ahead and an accident could occur.

Install the X008AU/X008EU/INE-W957A/INE-W957E correctly so that the driver cannot watch DVD/TV/Video unless the vehicle is stopped and the emergency brake is applied.

If the X008AU/X008EU/INE-W957A/INE-W957E is not installed correctly, the driver will be able to watch the DVD/TV/Video while driving the vehicle and may be distracted from looking ahead causing an accident. The driver or other people could be severely injured.

### ⚠ Caution

- Not all functions will operate for every DVD. See the individual DVD's instructions for details on the features supported.
- Fingerprints on a disc may adversely affect playback. If a problem occurs, remove the disc and check for fingerprints on the playback side. Clean the disc if necessary.
- If you switch the power or Ignition key OFF or change sources during playback, playback will continue where you left off when you resume playback.
- If you try to perform an invalid operation (based on the type of disc being played), the following mark is displayed on the monitor screen: ⊘

- **Play Position Memory Function**  
Even if you turn power off or switch the Ignition key to OFF during playback or change the source, playback will continue from the point where playback stopped when the power is turned ON again.

1 Press the button.

2 Touch [Disc] of Top banner.

The display shows the Disc mode screen.

Or insert a disc with the label side facing up. The unit starts to play the disc.

- The reverse side of a double-sided DVD will not be played automatically.  
Remove the disc, turn it over, and reinsert it.
- DO NOT insert discs containing maps for the navigation system. Doing so could result in damage.
- Refer also to "Disc Setting" (page 52).
- While reading a DivX<sup>®</sup> file, the fast-forwarding/fast-reversing and repeat functions, etc. cannot be used.
- A DivX<sup>®</sup> file that exceeds 4GB cannot be played back.

## If a Menu Screen Appears

On DVD mode, menu screens may appear automatically. If this happens, perform the operation described below to start playback.

### Direct Menu Operations DVD-V

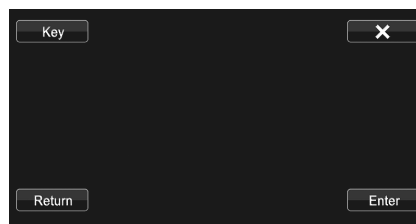
Touch the DVD menu directly.

- Some operations cannot be performed depending on the disc.

### Menu Operations DVD-V

1 Touch [Key].

The menu operation mode will be displayed.

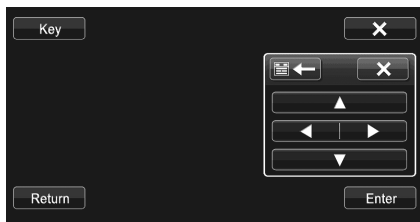


Touch [] or [] to change the Key panel location from right to left or vice-versa.

Touch [Return] to return to the previous display.



- 2 Select a desired menu item by touching [▼], [▲], [◀] or [▶].



- Touching [X] in the operation panel returns to the screen in step 1.
- Touching [Key] displays the Numeric Keypad Input Mode screen.  
For details of the Numeric Keypad Input Mode screen, refer to "Numeric Keypad Input Operations" (page 36).

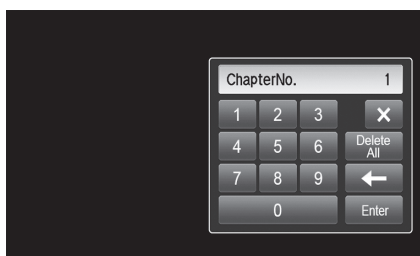
- 3 Touch [Enter] to confirm the selected item.

### Numeric Keypad Input Operations DVD-V

- 1 Touch [10KEY] of Bottom banner.

The numeric keypad input mode screen appears.  
If [10KEY] is not displayed, touch [◀◀] in the bottom banner to display [10KEY].

- 2 Touch a desired number.



Touch [◀] to delete an entered number.  
Touch [Delete All] to delete all entered number.

- 3 Touch [Enter] on the numeric keypad mode screen to confirm your selection.

Touch [X] to hide the keypad display.

### Displaying the Top Menu Screen DVD-V

When a DVD contains two or more titles, the top menu screen appears.

**Touch [TOP MENU] of Bottom banner.**

The top menu screen appears.

- To perform necessary operations, refer to "If a Menu Screen Appears" (page 35).

### Displaying the Menu Screen DVD-V

With a DVD having two or more menus, a menu screen will appear for the programmes available, in addition to the main programmes.

**Touch [MENU] of Bottom banner.**

The Root menu screen appears.

- To perform necessary operations, refer to "If a Menu Screen Appears" (page 35).

## Stopping Playback (PRE STOP)

DVD-V DivX

Touch the stop button during playback to stop playback. That position is stored in the memory.

- 1 Touch [■] during playback.

"Pre ■" indicator and [▶] in the middle of the screen are displayed.

- 2 Touch [▶/II] in the PRE STOP mode or touch [▶] in the middle of the screen.

Playback starts from the position at which it was stopped.

- For some discs, the position at which playback was stopped may not be accurate.

## Stopping Playback DVD-V DivX

**Touch and hold [■] for at least 2 seconds during playback.**

"■" indicator and [▶] in the middle of the screen are displayed.

- Playback starts from the beginning when [▶/II] or [▶] in the middle of the screen is touched while playback is stopped.

## Fast-forwarding/Fast-reversing

DVD-V

DivX

### 1 During playback, touch and hold [◀◀] (Fast-reverse) or touch and hold [▶▶] (Fast-forward).

#### DVD-Video:

Touch and hold for more than 1 second to forward/reverse at double speed.

Every time you touch [◀◀]/[▶▶] during fast- reverse/fast-forward, the speed changes as follows: 2x → 8x → 32x → 2x.

#### DivX®:

Touch and hold for more than 1 second to forward/reverse at 8x speed.

Every time you touch [◀◀]/[▶▶] during fast- reverse/fast-forward, the speed changes as follows: 8x → 16x → 32x → 8x.

- For a DivX® file that does not contain index information, the fast forward and the reverse option is not available.

### 2 Touch [▶/||] to return to normal playback.

- No sound is played back during fast-forwarding/fast-reversing.
- On DVD mode, the menu screen may reappear during fast-forwarding/fast-reversing.
- This operation may not be possible on certain discs.

## Finding the Beginnings of Chapters/Tracks/Files

DVD-V

DivX

### During playback, touch [◀◀] or [▶▶].

The chapter/track/file switches each time the button is touched, and playback of the selected chapter/track/file starts.

- ▶▶: Touch this to start playback from the beginning of the following chapter, track or file.
- ◀◀: Touch this to start playback from the beginning of the current chapter, track or file.

- Some DVDs do not have chapters.

#### Supplementary explanations

“Chapters” are divisions of movies or musical selections on DVDs.

## Playing Still Frames (Pausing)

DVD-V

DivX

### 1 During playback, Touch [▶/||] of Bottom banner.

### 2 Touch [▶/||] or [▶] in the middle of the screen to resume playback.

- No sound is played during the still frame mode.
- The image or sound may stop temporarily when playback starts from the pause mode. This is not a malfunction.

## Forward frame-by-frame Playback

DVD-V

### 1 In the pause mode, touch [▶▶].

The picture advances by one frame each time the button is touched.

### 2 Touch [▶/||] or [▶] in the middle of the screen to return to normal mode.

- No sound is output during forward frame-by-frame playback.
- You cannot execute reverse frame-by-frame playback.

## Slow Motion Playback

DVD-V

### 1 When [▶▶] is touched and held while in the pause mode, the 1/8th speed slow motion playback mode is set.

Furthermore, when touched and held [▶▶] again, the slow motion speed switches to 1/2 the normal speed.

### 2 Touch [▶/||] of Bottom banner to play back.

- No sound is played during slow motion playback.
- 1/2, 1/8 are approximate speeds. The actual speed differs from disc to disc.
- You cannot execute reverse slow motion playback.

## Selecting Folders DivX

Touch [**<■**] or [**■>**] of Bottom banner to select the folder.

- Touch [**<■**] to play from the first file of the previous folder.  
Touch [**■>**] to play from the first file of the next folder.

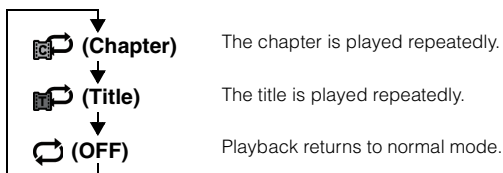
## Repeat Playback DVD-V DivX

Use this function to play the disc's titles, chapters or tracks, etc., repeatedly.

Touch [**↺**] of Bottom banner.

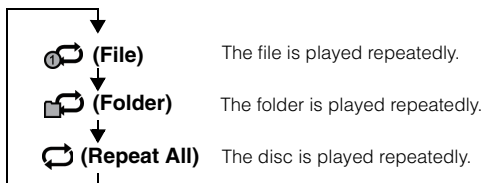
The repeat mode switches every time the button is touched.

### DVD Video



- The REPEAT mode is always turned off when [**↺**] is touched and held for at least 2 seconds.
- Only discs containing a Playlist can be displayed.

### DivX®



## Searching by Title Number DVD-V

Use this function to easily find positions on the DVD using the DVD's titles. Perform operations while playback is stopped.

### 1 Touch [**10KEY**] of Bottom banner.

The numeric keypad input mode screen appears.

If [10KEY] is not displayed, touch [**<<**] in the bottom banner to display [10KEY].

- For DVD Video, the numeric keypad can also be displayed by touching [**Menu Control**] of Bottom banner and then touching [**Key**] twice.

### 2 Enter a desired title by touching its number.

See page 36 for operation of the numeric keypad.

### 3 Touch [**Enter**].

Playback will start from the number selected.

### 4 Touch [**×**].

- This function cannot be used on discs on which no title numbers are recorded.
- Some disc may not accept any operation.

## Searching Directly by Chapter Number

DVD-V

Use this function to easily move to the beginnings of the chapters on the disc. Perform operations during playback, during PRE-STOP or while playback is paused.

### 1 Touch [**10KEY**] of Bottom banner.

The numeric keypad input mode screen will appear.

If [10KEY] is not displayed, touch [**<<**] in the bottom banner to display [10KEY].

### 2 Touch and enter the chapter number you want to play.

See page 36 for operation of the numeric keypad.

### 3 Touch [**Enter**] to confirm your selection.

Playback will start from the selected chapter.

### 4 Touch [**×**].

- This function is not available for a disc on which chapters are not stored.

## Searching for a Desired Video File

DivX

You can select a video file from the list screen.

**1 Touch [Q (Search)] of Bottom banner.**  
The search mode is activated.

**2 Touch [Video].**  
The folder list screen appears.

### Folder Name Search mode

**3 Touch [▶] in the desired folder.**  
The first file in the selected folder is played back.

### File Name Search mode

**3 Touch the desired folder name.**  
The File name of the selected folder is displayed.

**4 Touch the desired file name.**  
The selected file is played back.

- To return to the previous hierarchy, touch [↶].
- For details on how to scroll through the list, refer to “Selecting an Item in a List” (page 29).
- After selecting a folder via a Folder name search, touch [≡] on the main screen to display the folder search screen.
- After selecting a file via a File name search, touch [≡] on the main screen to display the file search screen.

## Switching the Angle DVD-V

On DVDs in which scenes have been filmed from multiple angles, the angle can be switched during playback.

### Touch [ANGLE] of Bottom banner.

The angle switches between the angles recorded on the disc every time the button is touched.

If [ANGLE] is not displayed, touch [<<] in the bottom banner to display [ANGLE].

- Some time may be required for the angle to change.
- Depending on the disc, the angle may switch in one of two ways.
  - Seamless: The angle switches smoothly.
  - Non-seamless: When the angle is switched, a still picture is displayed first, after which the angle switches.

## Switching the Audio Tracks DVD-V DivX

DVDs with multiple audio tracks or languages allow switching the sound during playback.

### Touch [AUDIO] of Bottom banner.

The sound switches between the alternate audio tracks recorded on the disc every time the button is touched.

If [AUDIO] is not displayed, touch [<<] in the bottom banner to display [AUDIO].

- The alternate track selected becomes the default setting every time the power is turned on or the disc is replaced. If the disc does not include that track, the disc's default language is selected instead.
- Not all discs will allow changing the alternate audio tracks during playback. In these cases, select audio tracks from the DVDs menu.
- There may be a delay before the selected alternate track begins to play.

## Switching the Subtitles (Subtitle Language) DVD-V DivX

With DVDs on which multiple subtitle languages are recorded, the subtitle language can be switched during playback; moreover, subtitles can be hidden.

### Touch [Sub Title] of Bottom banner.

Touching this button repeatedly selects sequentially the subtitle languages recorded on the disc, and then turns the subtitles OFF.

If [Sub Title] is not displayed, touch [<<] in the bottom banner to display [Sub Title].

- There may be a delay before the selected subtitle appears.
- Not all discs will allow changing the subtitles during playback. In these cases, select subtitles from the DVDs menu.
- The subtitle language selected becomes the default setting every time the power is turned on or the disc is replaced. If the disc does not include that language, the disc's default language is selected instead. However, the subtitle language may differ depending on the disc.
- For some discs, the subtitles will be displayed even when this is set to OFF. However, the subtitle language may differ depending on the disc.

## About DivX®

DivX® is a codec (software) to compress moving images while maintaining image quality using a highly advanced compression ratio and operating speed.

- *Official DivX® Certified product*

**ABOUT DIVX VIDEO:** DivX® is a digital video format created by DivX, LLC, a subsidiary of Rovi Corporation. This is an official DivX Certified® device that plays DivX video. Visit [divx.com](http://divx.com) for more information and software tools to convert your files into DivX videos.

**ABOUT DIVX VIDEO-ON-DEMAND:** This DivX Certified® device must be registered in order to play purchased DivX Video-on-Demand (VOD) movies. To obtain your registration code, locate the DivX VOD section in your device setup menu. Go to [vod.divx.com](http://vod.divx.com) for more information on how to complete your registration.

### Media supported

The unit can play back CD-R/CD-RW/DVD-R/DVD-RW/DVD+R/DVD+RW discs and USB memory device that are recorded in the DivX® mode.

### Corresponding extension

“avi”, “divx”

### Video Codec

DivX® versions 3, 4, 5, and 6 (versions 5 handle both interlaced and progressive)

### Audio Codec

MPEG1 Layer2 (MP2)	32 to 384 kbps
MPEG1 Layer3 (MP3)	32 to 320 kbps
MPEG2 Layer2 (MP2)	8 to 160 kbps
MPEG2 Layer3 (MP3)	8 to 160 kbps
Dolby Digital	32 to 448 kbps

# Setup

## Setup Operation

Touch the [SETUP] icon on the Audio/Visual Playback screen to display the Setup main screen.



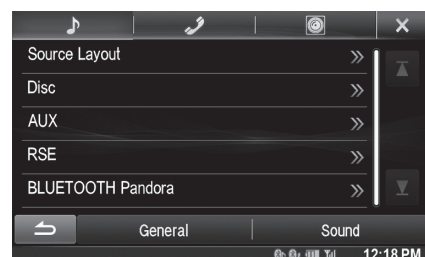
## General Setup

### General Setup Operation

The following steps 1 to 5 are common operations to each “Setting item” of General Setup. Refer to each section for details.

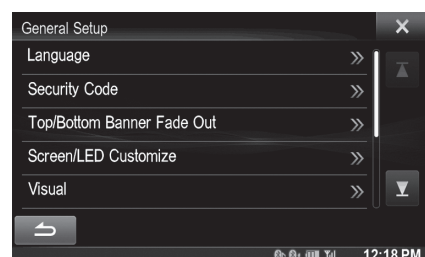
**1 Touch [Setup] icon of Top banner.**  
The Setup main screen is displayed.

**2 Touch [General].**



The General Setup screen appears.

**3 Select the desired item.**



**Setting items:** *Language / Remote Sensor\*<sup>1</sup> / Security Code / Top/Bottom Banner Fade Out / Screen/ LED Customize / Visual / About / Installation / External AP / Optical\*<sup>2</sup>*

\*<sup>1</sup> Displayed only when RSE is On (page 55).

\*<sup>2</sup> Available only when External AP is On.

- Depending on the item, repeat step 3.

#### 4 Touch [◀] or [▶] etc., to change its setting.

- When the pop-up window for setup is displayed, touch [X] to close the window after setting.

#### 5 Touch [↶] to return to the previous screen.

- Immediately after changing the settings of General Setup (While the system is writing data automatically) do not turn the ignition key to OFF. Otherwise, the settings may not be changed.

## Language Setting

Touch [Language] on the General setup menu in step 3. Refer to “General Setup Operation” (page 40).

### Setting the Scroll

Scroll display is available if CD text, folder name, file name or tag information is entered.

**Setting item:** *Auto Scroll*

**Setting contents:** *Off / On (Initial setting)*

- Off: Turns off the scroll mode.
- On: Turns on the Auto scroll mode. Scroll display is repeated as long as the mode is turned on.

### Format settings

The character code to be used for tag text information displayed on the screen can be selected from 7 character codes.

**Setting item:** *Format Sel.*

**Setting contents:** *EU1 / EU2 (Initial setting) / RUS / CHI / THA / ARA / HEB*

- EU1: ISO 8859-1
- EU2: ISO 8859-15
- RUS: ISO 8859-5
- CHI: GB18030
- THA: CP874
- ARA: CP1256
- HEB: CP1255

### Setting the Menu Language

The Setup menu, feedback information, etc. for this unit can be changed to appear in the selected language.

**Setting item:** *Language Sel.*

**Setting contents:** English/Deutsch/Français/Español/Português/Italiano/Nederlands/Suomi/Norsk/Svenska/русский язык/ไทย/العربية/中文/Other languages (Čeština/Dansk/Ελληνικά/Magyar/Polski/Slovenčina/Türkçe/עברית/Bahasa Indonesia/Bahasa Melayu)

- Touch [OK] to confirm the language and display the screen in the specified language.

## Remote Sensor Setting

[Remote Sensor] is selected on the General setup menu in step 3. Refer to “General Setup Operation” (page 40).

For remote control operation, the remote sensor of the external device (monitor, etc.) can be switched, as you prefer.

**Setting item:** *Remote Sensor*

**Setting contents:** *Front (Initial setting) / Rear*

- Front: The remote sensor of this unit is effective.
- Rear: The remote sensor of the external monitor connected to AUX OUTPUT of this unit becomes effective. The remote control operates the source connected to the AUX OUTPUT terminals.

- If the RSE (page 55) is “Off”, the setting is not displayed.

## Security Code Setting

[Security Code] is selected on the General setup menu in step 3. Refer to “General Setup Operation” (page 40).

### Setting Security code

You can set the system to be unusable without entering a password. When you turn this setting to “On” and set a password, password input is required when the system is connected to a battery and turned on for the first time.

**Setting item:** *Security Code*

**Setting contents:** *Off (Initial setting) / On*

#### Setting the password

##### 1 Touch [◀] or [▶] of “Security Code” to set to “On”.

##### 2 After the confirmation message appears, touch [OK].

The password setting screen is displayed.

##### 3 Enter a password, then touch [OK].

- Enter the 6-digit number.
- Input numbers are displayed as “\*”.

##### 4 Enter the same password again, then touch [OK].

The password is set and the system returns to the previous screen.

- If you forget a registered password, you cannot use this unit. In this case, service will be required.

#### Clearing the password

##### 1 Touch [◀] or [▶] of “Security Code” to set to “Off”.

The password setting screen is displayed.

##### 2 Enter the password you have set, then touch [OK].

The password is cleared and the system returns to the previous screen.

- Input numbers are displayed as “\*”.

## Setting Top banner and Bottom banner Display

[Top/Bottom Banner Fade Out] is selected on the General setup menu in step 3. Refer to “General Setup Operation” (page 40). You can configure the display setting for the Top banner and Bottom banner for the audio/visual source.

**Setting item:** Top/Bottom Banner Fade Out

**Setting contents:** Off (Initial setting) / On

Off: Always displayed

On: Fade out after 5 seconds if no operations performed

## Screen/LED Customize

Touch [Screen/LED Customize] on the General setup menu in step 3. Refer to “General Setup Operation” (page 40).

### Setting the Brightness of the Backlighting

Backlighting is provided by a fluorescent light built into the liquid crystal panel. The illumination control adjusts the brightness of the backlighting based on the car ambient lighting for easier viewing.

**Setting item:** Dimmer

**Setting contents:** Auto (Initial setting) / On / Off

Auto: Adjust the brightness of the background illumination of the monitor automatically to the brightness of the car interior.

On: Keep the background illumination of the monitor dark.

Off: Deactivate Auto Dimmer mode to keep the background illumination of the monitor bright.

- When “Auto” or “On” is set, the setting is also applied for the button lighting in “Adjusting the Dimmer of Button Lighting at Night” (page 42), and “Adjusting the Minimum Level of Backlight” (page 42).

### Adjusting the Minimum Level of Backlight

You can adjust the brightness of the backlight. This function could be used, for instance, to change the screen brightness while travelling at night.

**Setting item:** Screen Dimmer Level

**Setting content:** -15 to +15 (Initial setting: 0)

You can adjust the level between MIN (-15) and MAX (+15). When it reaches the minimum or maximum point, the display shows “MIN” or “MAX” respectively.

### Adjusting the Dimmer of Button Lighting at Night

You can adjust the brightness of the button lighting at night with the dimmer.

**Setting item:** Key Illumination Level

**Setting level:** -2 to +2 (Initial setting: 0)

## Switching the Display Colour

You can choose from 5 different display colours.

**Setting item:** Screen Colour


**Setting contents:** Blue (Initial setting) / Red / Green / Amber / Black

## Adjusting the Touch Panel

Adjustment becomes necessary when the display position on the LCD and the touch position on the touch panel do not match.

**Setting item:** Screen Alignment

**1 Touch [Screen Alignment] in the Screen/LED Customize screen.**  
The adjustment screen appears.

**2 Accurately touch the  mark provided in the upper left corner of the screen.**

**3 Accurately touch the  mark provided in the lower right corner of the screen.**

This completes adjustment, and returns to the previous screen.

- If you touch [Cancel] on the adjustment screen, no adjustment is done and returns to the previous screen.

## Initializing the Touch Panel Corrected Values

Initialize the corrected values adjusted by Adjusting the Touch Panel.

**1 Touch [Screen Alignment Reset] in the Screen/LED Customize screen.**

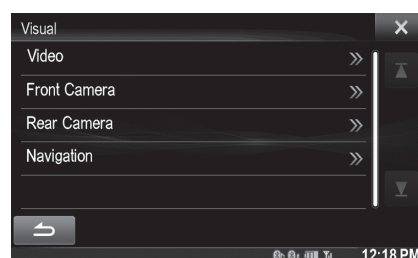
**2 After the confirmation message appears, touch [OK].**

The corrected values are initialized.

## Visual Setting

[Visual] is selected on the General setup menu in step 3. Refer to “General Setup Operation” (page 40).

**1 Touch the desired item.**



- “Video” can be selected while a video is playing.

## 2 Touch [ >> ] of the desired item.

Settable items differ depending on the application.

- [Video] (Video media):  
Display Mode\*<sup>1</sup> / Live Contrast / Visual EQ / Bright / Colour / Tint / Contrast / Sharp
- [Direct Camera]\*<sup>2</sup>:  
Live Contrast / Bright / Colour / Contrast
- [AUX Camera]\*<sup>2</sup>:  
Live Contrast / Bright / Colour / Contrast
- [Navigation]:  
Bright / Contrast

\*<sup>1</sup> When media is set to AUX, the settings cannot be changed in the situations below.

- When AUX name is set to DVB-T and “Direct Touch” is set to On (page 54), the Display Mode setting is fixed as WIDE.

\*<sup>2</sup> The camera names set under the “Direct Camera/AUX Camera” settings are displayed. The camera names are not displayed when “Off” is set (pages 58, 59).

## 3 Touch [ < ] or [ > ] to change its setting.

## 4 Touch [ ↶ ] to return to the previous screen.

- Immediately after changing the settings of Display Setup (While the system is writing data automatically) do not turn the ignition key to OFF. Otherwise, the settings may not be changed.

### Switching Display Modes

**Setting item: Display Mode**

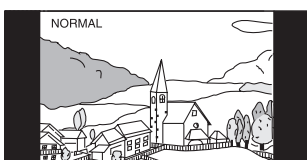
**Setting contents: WIDE (Initial setting) / CINEMA / NORMAL**



In WIDE mode, the monitor displays a normal picture wider to fit in a wide-screen monitor by evenly stretching out the picture horizontally.



In CINEMA mode, the monitor displays a normal picture by stretching out the picture horizontally and vertically. This mode is good for displaying a cinema type picture at the 16:9 ratio.



In NORMAL mode, the monitor displays a normal picture at the centre of the screen with a vertical black band at each side.

### Adjusting the Live Contrast

This function automatically adjusts the areas on the screen that are too bright or too dark and corrects them to natural brightness.

**Setting item: Live Contrast**

**Setting contents: OFF (Initial setting) / LOW / HIGH**

### Selecting the Visual EQ Mode (Factory's setting)

You can select a mode suitable for the subject image.

**Setting item: Visual EQ**

**Setting contents: OFF (Initial setting) / NIGHT M. / SOFT / SHARP / CONTRAST**

- |           |   |
|-----------|---|
| OFF:      | Initial Setting   |
| NIGHT M.: | Suitable for movies in which dark scenes frequently appear. |
| SOFT:     | Suitable for CGs and animated films.                        |
| SHARP:    | Suitable for old movies where images are not clearly shown. |
| CONTRAST: | Suitable for recent movies.                                 |

- To return to the default video settings, set this function to OFF. Any Visual EQ selection or changes made are reset their initial settings.

### Adjusting Brightness

**Setting item: Bright**

**Setting content: -15 to +15 (Initial setting: 0)**

You can adjust the brightness between MIN (-15) and MAX (+15). When it reaches the minimum or maximum point, the display shows “MIN” or “MAX” respectively.

### Adjusting Colour of Picture

**Setting item: Colour**

**Setting content: -15 to +15 (Initial setting: 0)**

You can adjust the Colour between MIN (-15) and MAX (+15). When it reaches the minimum or maximum point, the display shows “MIN” or “MAX” respectively.

### Adjusting Tint of Picture

**Setting item: Tint**

**Setting content: R15 to G15 (Initial setting: 0)**

Adjust the Colour from R15 to G15.



## Adjusting Image Contrast

**Setting item: Contrast**

**Setting content: -15 to +15 (Initial setting: 0)**

You can adjust the contrast between LOW (-15) and HIGH (+15). When it reaches the minimum or maximum point, the display shows "LOW" or "HIGH" respectively.

## Adjusting Picture Quality

**Setting item: Sharp**

**Setting content: -5 to +5 (Initial setting: 0)**

Picture quality adjustment range is -5 to +5. "SOFT" and "HARD" appear as the minimum and maximum values specified.

## Saving and calling the adjusted picture quality

When adjusting audio (video media), you can store the settings made for "Adjusting Live Contrast, Brightness, Colour, Tint, Contrast and Sharp".

**Setting item: Preset1 / Preset2**

- 1 After completing "Adjusting Live Contrast, Brightness, Colour, Tint, Contrast and Sharp" (page 43), touch and hold [Preset1] or [Preset2] to save the settings.
- 2 Touch [Preset1] or [Preset2] to call the saved settings.

- *Display Mode cannot be registered.*

## About X008AU/X008EU/INE-W957A/INE-W957E

Touch [About] on the General setup menu in step 3. Refer to "General Setup Operation" (page 40).

## Displaying the Product Information

You can view the version information of this product. Make note of this information and refer to it whenever you contact Alpine Tech Support or an Alpine-authorized dealer.

**Setting item: Version Info**

**Contents: Serial No. / Firmware Version**

## Checking the DivX® Registration

This unit will display the registration code required to play a DivX® VOD (Video On Demand), or you can also display the deregistration code.

**Setting item: Warranty / Copyright Info.**

### Displaying the Registration Code

- 1 Touch [Warranty/Copyright Info.].
- 2 Touch [DivX(R) VOD].
- 3 Touch [Registration].  
The registration code is displayed on the screen.
- 4 Touch [OK].

### Displaying the Deregistration Code

- 1 Touch [Warranty/Copyright Info.].
  - 2 Touch [DivX(R) VOD].
  - 3 Touch [Deregistration].  
The confirmation dialog screen appears.
  - 4 Touch [OK].  
The deregistration code is displayed on the screen.
- *When you have finished, touch [Cancel]. If you want to continue and display a new registration code, touch [OK], check the registration code, and then touch [OK] again.*

## Initializing the System

You can initialize all data, to restore the factory settings. Remove the CD/DVD disc, etc. from the system before operation

**Setting item: Restore Factory Setting**

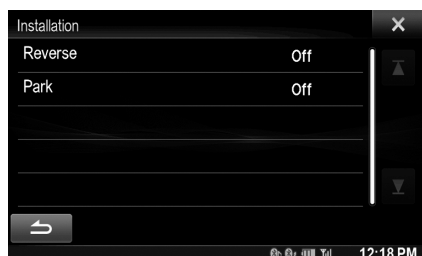
- 1 Touch [Restore Factory Setting].
  - 2 After the confirmation message appears, touch [OK].  
The confirmation screen appears again.
  - 3 Touch [OK].  
The system starts initialization.
- *Do not turn on/off the power, change the ignition key position or remove the screen panel until system restart is completed.*

## Installation Setup

[Installation] is selected on the General setup menu in step 3. See “General Setup Operation” (page 40).

### Setting item: Installation

The Installation check screen is displayed.



## Setting the External Audio Processor On/Off

[External AP] is selected on the General setup menu in step 3. Refer to “General Setup Operation” (page 40).

When a compatible external audio processor is connected, please set this item to “On”.

### Setting item: External AP

Setting contents: Off (Initial setting) / On

- Off: The connected audio processor is not recognised by X008AU/X008EU/INE-W957A/INE-W957E.
- On: The connected audio processor is recognised by X008AU/X008EU/INE-W957A/INE-W957E.

- Some items of Sound Setup cannot be adjusted from this unit when External AP is set to On.
- Press and hold /AUDIO button is invalid when External AP is set to On.

## Setting the Digital Output

[Optical] is selected on the General setup menu in step 3. Refer to “General Setup Operation” (page 40).

To connect an audio processor using optical digital output, set to “On” by the following procedure.

### Setting item: Optical

Setting contents: Off (Initial setting) / On

- This setting is available only when External AP is set to On. Refer to “Setting the External Audio Processor On/Off” (page 45).
- If Optical is set to On, the Optical () indicator appears.
- , and MUTE buttons are invalid when Optical is set to On.

## Sound Setup

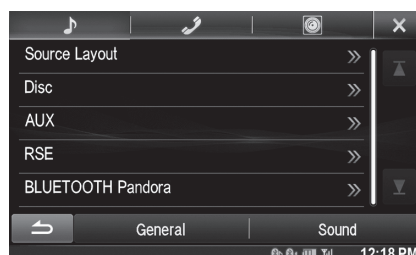
### Sound Setup Operation

The following steps 1 to 5 are common operations to each “Setting item” of Sound Setup. Refer to each section for details.

#### 1 Touch [Setup] icon of Top banner.

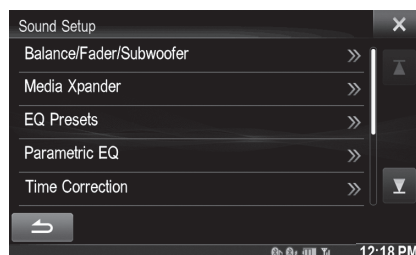
The Setup main screen is displayed.

#### 2 Touch [Sound].



The Sound Setup screen appears.

#### 3 Select the desired item.



Setting items: Balance/Fader/Subwoofer<sup>\*1</sup> / Media Xpander<sup>\*1</sup> / EQ Presets<sup>\*1</sup> / Parametric EQ<sup>\*1</sup> / Time Correction<sup>\*1</sup> / X-OVER<sup>\*1</sup> / Defeat<sup>\*1</sup> / Volume / Source Volume Setup<sup>\*2</sup>

<sup>\*1</sup> These items cannot be adjusted when External AP is set to On, refer to “Setting the External Audio Processor On/Off” (page 45).

<sup>\*2</sup> This item cannot be adjusted when Optical is set to On, refer to “Setting the Digital Output” (page 45).

#### 4 Touch [◀] or [▶] etc., to change its setting.

- When the pop-up window for setup is displayed, touch [X] to close the window after setting.

#### 5 Touch [↶] to return to the previous screen.

- Immediately after changing the Sound Setup (while the system is writing data automatically) do not turn the ignition key to OFF. Otherwise, the settings may not be changed.
- For details on how to scroll through the list, refer to “Selecting an Item in a List” (page 29).
- When BASS ENGINE SQ mode is selected or TuneIt is launched, some setting items are not adjustable. Refer to “BASS ENGINE SQ mode” (page 24)/“Applying TuneIt” (page 25).

## Setting the Balance/Fader/Subwoofer

[Balance/Fader/Subwoofer] is selected on the Sound setup menu in step 3. Refer to “Sound Setup Operation” (page 45).

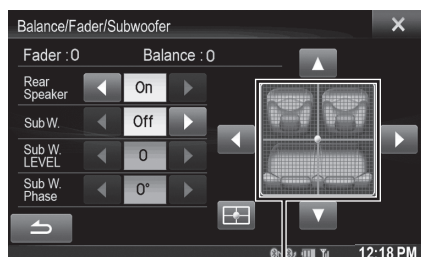


Image area

### Setting the Balance/Fader

Touch the desired point within the image area. Or touch [▲][▼][◀][▶].

**Balance:** L15 to R15

**Fader:** F15 to R15

### Rear Speaker Setting

You can set the rear speaker output to “Off”.

**Setting item:** Rear Speaker

**Setting contents:** On (Initial setting) / Off

- Note that if you select “Off” when the Rear Speaker Position in Car Specific Sound Setup is set to “Rear Deck” or “Rear Door/Panel”, the setting in Car Specific Sound Setup will be cancelled.

USER1/USER2

### Turning Subwoofer ON/OFF

If an optional subwoofer is connected to the unit, make the following setting.

**Setting item:** SubW.

**Setting contents:** On / Off (Initial setting)

- Note that if you select “Off” when Subwoofer Installed in Car Specific Sound Setup is set to “Yes”, the setting in Car Specific Sound Setup will be cancelled.

USER1/USER2

### Adjusting the Subwoofer Level

You can set the Subwoofer level when a Subwoofer is connected.

**Setting item:** SubW. LEVEL

**Setting contents:** 0 to 15 (Initial setting: 0)

- If the Subwoofer setting is “Off”, the setting cannot be set.

### Setting the Subwoofer Phase

The subwoofer output phase is toggled Subwoofer Normal (0°) or Subwoofer Reverse (180°).

**Setting item:** SubW. Phase

**Setting contents:** 0° (Initial setting) / 180°

- If the Subwoofer setting is “Off”, the setting cannot be set.

## Setting the MX (Media Xpander)

[Media Xpander] is selected on the Audio setup menu in step 3. Refer to “Sound Setup Operation” (page 45). When the currently playing source is AM radio band, this option is not available.

MX (Media Xpander) makes vocals or instruments sound distinct regardless of the music source. The FM radio, CD, USB memory and iPod/iPhone, will be able to reproduce the music clearly even in cars with a lot of road noise.

**Setting item:** Media Xpander

- Touch [ON] of “ALL MX OFF/ON” in the MX setup screen.



- Touch any of [OFF] [Movie] [DVD Music] [Compress Media] [Pandora\*] [AUX/AUX3] [HDMI].

Media	Level			
	OFF	1	2	3
FM	OFF	[Bar Graph]	[Bar Graph]	[Bar Graph]
DVD	OFF	Movie [Bar Graph]	Movie [Bar Graph]	DVD Music [Bar Graph]
CD	OFF	[Bar Graph]	[Bar Graph]	[Bar Graph]
Compress Media	OFF	[Bar Graph]	[Bar Graph]	[Bar Graph]
Pandora*	OFF	[Bar Graph]	[Bar Graph]	[Bar Graph]
AUX/AUX3	OFF	Compress Media [Bar Graph]	Movie [Bar Graph]	Music [Bar Graph]
HDMI	OFF	Compress Media [Bar Graph]	Movie [Bar Graph]	Music [Bar Graph]

- The MX setting can be performed only when a source is currently selected.
- MP3/WMA/AAC/iPod/USB/DivX®/BLUETOOTH Pandora/ BLUETOOTH Audio / CarMode / MirrorMode correspond to MX Compress Media.
- \* X008AU/INE-W957A only.

#### MX FM

The medium to high frequencies become more clear, and produces well balanced sound in all the bands.

#### MX DVD

##### (Movie)

The dialog portion of the video is reproduced more clearly

##### (DVD Music)

This disc contains a large quantity of data such as music clip. MX uses this data to reproduce the sound accurately.

#### MX CD

CD mode processes a large quantity of data. This data is used to reproduce the sound cleanly by making use of the data quantity.

#### MX Compress Media

This corrects information that was omitted at the time of compression. This reproduces a well-balanced sound close to the original.

### MX Pandora

This corrects information that was omitted at the time of compression. This reproduces a well-balanced sound close to the original.

### MX AUX/AUX3

Choose the MX mode (Compress Media, Movie, or Music) that corresponds to the media connected.

### HDMI

Choose the MX mode (Compress Media, MOVIE, or MUSIC) that corresponds to the media connected.

- To cancel MX mode for all music applications, set MX to "OFF" in step 1.
- Each music applications, such as FM radio, CD, and MP3/WMA/AAC can have its own MX setting.
- Setting to MX sets MX mode of each music applications to "OFF".
- There is no MX mode for AM radio.
- The function is inoperable when Defeat is set to "On".

## Equalizer Presets

[EQ Presets] is selected on the Sound setup menu in step 3. Refer to "Sound Setup Operation" (page 45).

10 typical equalizer settings are preset at the factory for a variety of musical source material.

#### Setting item: EQ Presets

**Setting contents:** FLAT (Initial setting) / POPS / ROCK / NEWS / JAZZ / ELECTRICAL DANCE / HIP HOP / EASY LISTENING / COUNTRY / CLASSICAL

- Only one type can be set to ON.
- When Equalizer Presets setting is edited, a Download Sound setting is disabled.
- When Equalizer Presets is set, the linked Parametric EQ settings are also changed. We recommend storing Parametric EQ settings in a Preset in advance.
- The Equalizer Presets setting can be configured when Defeat is "Off".

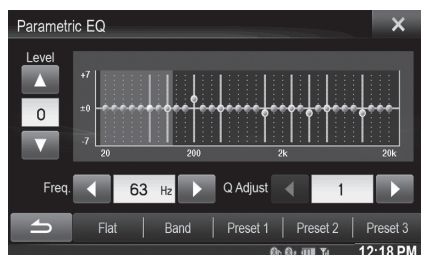
## Adjusting the Parametric Equalizer Curve (Parametric EQ)

[Parametric EQ] is selected on the Sound setup menu in step 3. Refer to "Sound Setup Operation" (page 45).

You can modify the Equalizer settings to create a response curve more appealing to your personal taste.

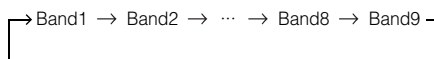
#### Setting item: Parametric EQ

### 1 Adjust the Parametric EQ to your preference.



### Adjusting the Band

Touch [Band] to select the band to be adjusted.



- You can select a band directly by touching the screen.

### Adjusting the Frequency

Touch [◀] or [▶] of "Freq." to adjust the frequency of the selected band.

#### Adjustable frequency bands: 20 Hz to 20 kHz (in 1/3 octave steps)

Band1:	20 Hz~100 Hz (63 Hz)
Band2:	63 Hz~315 Hz (125 Hz)
Band3:	125 Hz~500 Hz (250 Hz)
Band4:	250 Hz~1 kHz (500 Hz)
Band5:	500 Hz~2 kHz (1 kHz)
Band6:	1 kHz~4 kHz (2 kHz)
Band7:	2 kHz~7.2 kHz (4 kHz)
Band8:	5.8 kHz~12 kHz (8 kHz)
Band9:	9 kHz~20 kHz (16 kHz)

### Adjusting the Level

Touch [▼] or [▲] of "Level" to adjust the level of selected band.

**Setting contents:** -7 to +7 (Initial setting: 0)

### Setting the Bandwidth

Touch [◀] or [▶] of "Q Adjust" to select the bandwidth.

**Setting contents:** 1 (Initial setting) / 2 / 3

- 2 To adjust another band, repeat step 1, and adjust all bands.
- 3 To store the adjusted setting value, touch and hold [Preset1], [Preset2], or [Preset3] for at least 2 seconds.

- BAND2 and BAND8 are the same as the Bass and Treble controls. Their Level adjustment can also be controlled by pressing and holding / AUDIO and selecting Bass Level or Treble Level. Refer to "Easy Sound Setup mode" on page 24.
- Settings exceeding the frequency of adjacent bands are not available.
- While adjusting the Parametric EQ, you should consider the frequency response of the connected speakers.
- When the parametric EQ is adjusted, the Equalizer Presets are overridden.
- When Equalizer Presets is set, the linked Parametric EQ settings are also changed. We recommend storing Parametric EQ settings in a Preset in advance.
- Touch [Flat] to initialize all values.
- The Parametric EQ setting can be configured when Defeat is "Off".

### Calling the Parametric EQ adjusted value

Calling the pre-set Parametric EQ adjusted value.

Touch [Preset1], [Preset2], or [Preset3] on the Parametric EQ screen.

The setting stored in the Preset will be recalled.

## Adjusting the Time Correction (Time Correction)

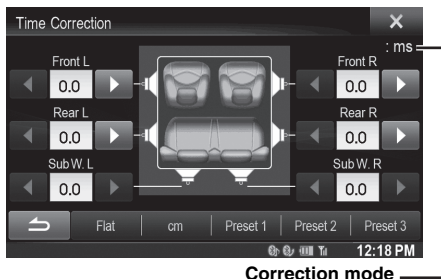
[Time Correction] is selected on the Sound setup menu in step 3. Refer to “Sound Setup Operation” (page 45).

Before performing the following procedures, refer to “About Time Correction” (page 49).

### Setting item: Time Correction

#### 1 Touch [cm], [inch] or [ms] to select mode for making adjustments.

Each time you touch, the onscreen button and correction mode changes.



cm/inch: Adjust listening position and distance from each speaker.

ms: Adjust time.

#### 2 Touch [◀] or [▶] for each speaker to adjust the time or distance.

0.0 msec to 9.9 msec (0.1 msec/step)

0.0 cm (0.0 inch) to 336.6 cm (132.7 inch) (3.4 cm/step)

All speaker setting values are adjustable in the range of 15 ms or 510 cm.

#### 3 To store the adjusted setting value, touch and hold [Preset1], [Preset2], or [Preset3] for at least 2 seconds.

- Touch [Flat] to set all values to 0.0.
- If the Rear Speaker setting is “Off”, the Rear Speaker setting cannot be edited (refer to page 46).
- If the Subwoofer setting is “Off”, the Subwoofer setting cannot be edited (refer to page 46).

### Calling the Time Correction Value

Calling the pre-set time correction value.

Touch [Preset1], [Preset2], or [Preset3] on the time correction screen.

The setting stored in the Preset will be recalled.

## Adjusting the Crossover Settings (X-OVER)

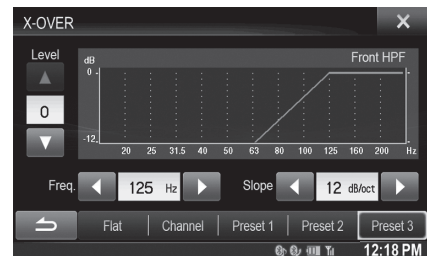
[X-OVER] is selected on the Sound setup menu in step 3. Refer to “Sound Setup Operation” (page 45).

Before performing the following procedures, refer to “About the Crossover” (page 50).

### Setting item: X-OVER

#### 1 Touch [Channel] to select the channel.

Each time you touch, the channel switches.



- The channel being adjusted is displayed in red.

→ Front HPF → Rear HPF → Subv. LPF

#### 2 Adjust the crossover to your preference.

### Selecting the Cut-Off Frequency

Touch [◀] or [▶] of “Freq.”, and then select the cut-off frequency.

Setting contents: 20 / 25 / 31.5 / 40 / 50 / 63 / 80 (Initial setting) / 100 / 125 / 160 / 200 Hz

### Adjusting the Slope

Touch [◀] or [▶] of “Slope”, and then adjust the HPF or LPF slope.

Setting contents: 0 (Initial setting) / 6 / 12 / 18 / 24 dB/oct.

### Adjusting the Level

Touch [▼] or [▲] of “Level”, and then adjust the HPF or LPF level.

Setting contents: -12 to 0 dB (Initial setting: 0)

#### 3 Repeat steps 1 to 2 to make adjustment to the other channels.

#### 4 To store the adjusted setting value, touch and hold **[Preset1]**, **[Preset2]**, or **[Preset3]** for at least 2 seconds.

- Touch **[Flat]** to initialize all values.
- If the **Rear Speaker** setting is "Off", the **Rear Speaker** setting cannot be edited (refer to page 46).
- If the **Subwoofer** setting is "Off", the **Subwoofer** setting cannot be edited (refer to page 46).
- While adjusting the **X-OVER** you should consider the frequency response of the connected speakers.

#### Calling the X-OVER adjusted value

Calling the pre-set X-OVER adjusted value.

Touch **[Preset1]**, **[Preset2]**, or **[Preset3]** on the **X-OVER** screen.

The setting stored in the Preset will be recalled.

## Setting Defeat

**[Defeat]** is selected on the Sound setup menu in step 3. Refer to "Sound Setup Operation" (page 45).

If Defeat is "On", MX, Equalizer Presets, Car Specific Sound Setup and Parametric EQ functions are turned OFF. This disables any settings made for these functions.

**Setting item:** Defeat

**Setting contents:** Off (Initial setting) / On

## Volume Setting

**[Volume]** is selected on the Sound setup menu in step 3. Refer to "Sound Setup Operation" (page 45).

You can change the volume of the sound heard when a button is touched.

**Setting item:** Key Sound Feedback

**Setting contents:** 0 to 7 (Initial setting: 4)

## Setting the Volume for Each Source

**[Source Volume Setup]** is selected on the Sound setup menu in step 3. Refer to "Sound Setup Operation" (page 45).

The volume level for each application can be adjusted.

**Setting item:** Radio / DVD / CD / Compressed Media / iPod Music / iPod Video / HDMI / Pandora\* / AUX / AUX3 / BLUETOOTH Audio

**Setting contents:** -14 to +14 (Initial setting: 0)

- Settable source differ depending on the connected device and settings.

\* X008AU/INE-W957A only.

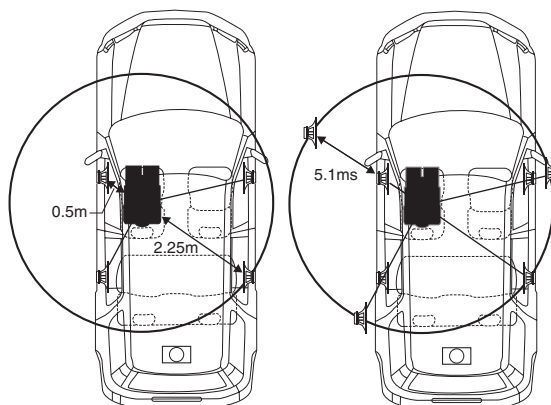
## About Time Correction

The distance between the listener and the speakers in a car vary widely due to the complex speaker placement. This difference in the distances from the speakers to the listener creates a shift in the sounds image and frequency characteristics. This is caused by the time delay between the sound reaching the listener's right versus the left ear.

To correct this, this unit is able to delay the audio signal to the speakers closest to the listener. This effectively creates a perception of increased distance for those speakers. The listener can be placed at an equal distance between the left and right speakers for optimum staging. The adjustment will be made for each speaker in 3.4 cm steps.

### Example 1. Listening Position: Front Left Seat

Adjust the time correction level of the front left speaker to a high value and the rear right to zero or a low value.



The sound is not balanced because the distance between the listening position and the various speakers is different. The difference in distance between the front left speaker and the rear right speaker is 1.75 m (68-7/8"). Here we calculate the time correction value for the front left speaker in the diagram on the above.

Conditions:

Farthest Speaker – listening position : 2.25 m (88-9/16")

Front left speaker – listening position : 0.5 m (19-11/16")

Calculation:  $L = 2.25 \text{ m} - 0.5 \text{ m} = 1.75 \text{ m (68-7/8")}$

Time correction =  $1.75 \div 343 \times 1,000 = 5.1 \text{ (ms)}$

\* Speed of sound: 343 m/s (765 mph) at 20°C

In other words, giving the front left speaker a time correction value of 5.1 ms makes it seem as if its distance from the listener is the same as the distance to the farthest speaker.

Time correction eliminates the differences in the time required for the sound to reach the listening position.

The time of the front left speaker is corrected by 5.1 ms so that its sound reaches the listening position at the same time as the sound of other speakers.

## Example 2. Listening Position: All Seats

Adjust the time correction level of each speaker to almost the same level.

- Sit in the listening position (driver's seat, etc.) and measure the distance (in metres) between your head and the various speakers.**
- Calculate the difference between the distance correction value to the farthest speaker and the other speakers.**

$$L = (\text{distance to farthest speaker}) - (\text{distance to other speakers})$$

These values are the time correction values for the different speakers. Setting these values to make each sound reach the listening position at the same time as the sound of other speakers.

Time Correction Value List

Time Difference (msec)	Distance (cm)	Distance (inch)	Time Difference (msec)	Distance (cm)	Distance (inch)
0.0	0.0	0.0	5.1	173.4	68.3
0.1	3.4	1.3	5.2	176.8	69.7
0.2	6.8	2.7	5.3	180.2	71.0
0.3	10.2	4.0	5.4	183.6	72.4
0.4	13.6	5.4	5.5	187.0	73.7
0.5	17.0	6.7	5.6	190.4	75.0
0.6	20.4	8.0	5.7	193.8	76.4
0.7	23.8	9.4	5.8	197.2	77.7
0.8	27.2	10.7	5.9	200.6	79.1
0.9	30.6	12.1	6.0	204.0	80.4
1.0	34.0	13.4	6.1	207.4	81.7
1.1	37.4	14.7	6.2	210.8	83.1
1.2	40.8	16.1	6.3	214.2	84.4
1.3	44.2	17.4	6.4	217.6	85.8
1.4	47.6	18.8	6.5	221.0	87.1
1.5	51.0	20.1	6.6	224.4	88.4
1.6	54.4	21.4	6.7	227.8	89.8
1.7	57.8	22.8	6.8	231.2	91.1
1.8	61.2	24.1	6.9	234.6	92.5
1.9	64.6	25.5	7.0	238.0	93.8
2.0	68.0	26.8	7.1	241.4	95.1
2.1	71.4	28.1	7.2	244.8	96.5
2.2	74.8	29.5	7.3	248.2	97.8
2.3	78.2	30.8	7.4	251.6	99.2
2.4	81.6	32.2	7.5	255.0	100.5
2.5	85.0	33.5	7.6	258.4	101.8
2.6	88.4	34.8	7.7	261.8	103.2
2.7	91.8	36.2	7.8	265.2	104.5
2.8	95.2	37.5	7.9	268.6	105.9
2.9	98.6	38.9	8.0	272.0	107.2
3.0	102.0	40.2	8.1	275.4	108.5
3.1	105.4	41.5	8.2	278.8	109.9
3.2	108.8	42.9	8.3	282.2	111.2
3.3	112.2	44.2	8.4	285.6	112.6
3.4	115.6	45.6	8.5	289.0	113.9
3.5	119.0	46.9	8.6	292.4	115.2
3.6	122.4	48.2	8.7	295.8	116.6
3.7	125.8	49.6	8.8	299.2	117.9
3.8	129.2	50.9	8.9	302.6	119.3
3.9	132.6	52.3	9.0	306.0	120.6
4.0	136.0	53.6	9.1	309.4	121.9

4.1	139.4	54.9	9.2	312.8	123.3
4.2	142.8	56.3	9.3	316.2	124.6
4.3	146.2	57.6	9.4	319.6	126.0
4.4	149.6	59.0	9.5	323.0	127.3
4.5	153.0	60.3	9.6	326.4	128.6
4.6	156.4	61.6	9.7	329.8	130.0
4.7	159.8	63.0	9.8	333.2	131.3
4.8	163.2	64.3	9.9	336.6	132.7
4.9	166.6	65.7			
5.0	170.0	67.0			

## About the Crossover

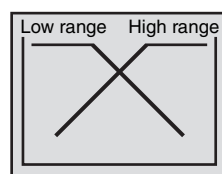
### Crossover (X-OVER):

This unit is equipped with an active crossover. The crossover limits the frequencies delivered to the outputs. Each channel is controlled independently. Thus, each speaker pair can be driven by the frequencies for which they have been optimally designed.

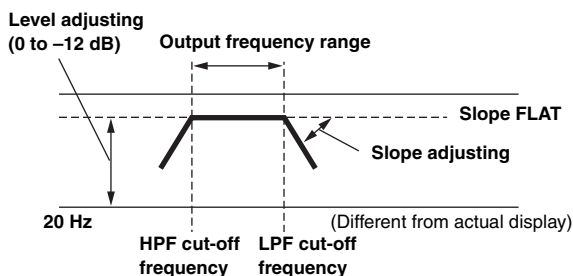
The crossover adjusts the HPF (high pass filter) or LPF (low pass filter) of each band, and also the slope (how fast the filter rolls off the highs or lows).

Adjustments should be made according to the reproduction characteristics of the speakers. Depending on the speakers, a passive network may not be necessary. If you are unsure about this point, please consult your authorized Alpine dealer.

	Cut-off frequency (1/3 octave steps)		Slope		Level
	HPF	LPF	HPF	LPF	
Low range speaker	----	20 Hz - 200 Hz	----	FLAT, -6, -12, -18, -24 dB/oct.	0 to -12 dB
Rear high range speaker	20 Hz - 200 Hz	----	FLAT, -6, -12, -18, -24 dB/oct.	----	0 to -12 dB
Front high range speaker	20 Hz - 200 Hz	----	FLAT, -6, -12, -18, -24 dB/oct.	----	0 to -12 dB



(Different from actual display)





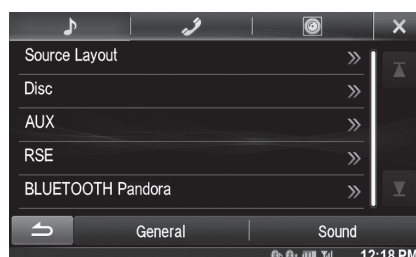
- **HPF (high pass filter):** Cuts the lower frequencies and allows the higher frequencies to pass.
  - **LPF (low pass filter):** Cuts the higher frequencies and allows the lower frequencies to pass.
  - **Slope:** The level change (in dB) for a frequency change of one octave.
  - The higher the slope value, the steeper the slope becomes.
  - Adjust the slope to **FLAT** to bypass the HP or LP filters.
  - Do not use a tweeter without the HPF on or set to a low frequency, as it may cause damage to the speaker due to the low frequency content.
  - You cannot adjust the crossover frequency higher than the HPF or lower than the LPF.
  - Adjustment should be made according to the recommended crossover frequency of the connected speakers. Determine the recommended crossover frequency of the speakers. Adjusting to a frequency range outside that recommended may cause damage to the speakers. For the recommended crossover frequencies of Alpine speakers, refer to the respective Owner's Manual.
- We are not responsible for damage or malfunction of speakers caused by using the crossover outside the recommended value.

## Source Setup

### Source Layout Setting

The following steps 1 to 5 are common operations to each "Setting item" of Source Setup. Refer to each section for details.

- 1 Touch [Setup] icon of Top banner.**  
The Setup main screen is displayed.
- 2 Touch [🎵 (Source)].**  
The Source Setup screen appears.
- 3 Select the desired item.**



**Setting items:** *Source Layout / Disc / AUX / RSE / BLUETOOTH Pandora (X008AU/INE-W957A only) / Tunelt*

- 4 Touch [◀] or [▶] etc., to change its setting.**
  - When the pop-up window for setup is displayed, touch [X] to close the window after setting.
- 5 Touch [↶] to return to the previous screen.**
  - Immediately after changing the Source Setup (while the system is writing data automatically) do not turn the ignition key to OFF. Otherwise, the settings may not be changed.

### Source Layout Setting

[Source Layout] is selected on the Source setup menu in step 3. Refer to "Source Layout Setting" (page 51).

USER1/USER2

#### Setting the Slide Source Change

You can set whether to switch sources by swiping from the designated area of the Audio/Visual Playback screen from right to left or from left to right. Refer to "Switching Sources" (page 28).

**Setting item:** *Slide Source Change*

**Setting contents:** *On (Initial setting) / Off*

- On: Source is changed by a swipe gesture.
- Off: Source is not changed by a swipe gesture.



## Setting the Easy Sound Setup Position

You can select this menu displayed on left or right of screen.

**Setting item:** *Sound Setup Position*

**Setting contents:** *Left (Initial setting) / Right*

## Customizing the Source Banner

You can customize the Source Banner order as you prefer. The source switching order is displayed according to your changes.



**Setting item:** *Source Banner Customize*

■ Take adjusting the order of Disc and AUX-1 as an example:

**1 Touch the desired source icon ([Disc] etc.).**

The [Disc] source icon is displayed highlighted. Touch this icon again to cancel.

**2 Touch another source icon ([AUX-1] etc.).**

The Source Banner positions for [Disc] and [AUX-1] are swapped.

## Disc Setting

Touch [Disc] on the Source setup menu in step 3. Refer to “Source Layout Setting” (page 51).

- You can perform DVD setup in DVD video mode.
- Touch [Stop] before performing Disc setup.

## Changing the language setting

The audio language, subtitle language and menu language can be set according to your preferences.

Once set, this becomes the default language. This function is convenient if you always want to listen in English, for example. (The language setting is not effective on some discs. In this case, the default language is set at the factory.)

- When the settings are changed, old settings are overwritten. Make a note of the current settings before making changes.
- To temporarily change the language of the current disc, either do so from the DVD menu or by using the operation described in the section “Switching the Audio Tracks” (page 39).
- If the disc does not include the selected language, the disc’s default language is set.

## To play in a language other than those displayed

- 1 Touch [DVD Menu Language Code], [Audio Language Code] or [SUBT Language Code].  
The numeric keypad screen is displayed.
- 2 Touch the 4-digit numeral of the language number.  
To reference language numbers, refer to “List of Language Codes” (page 87).
- 3 Touch [OK] to memorize the number.

- The setting content changes to “Other” if the desired language code is input.

## Setting of the Menu Language

Set the language used for the menus (title menu, etc.).

**Setting item:** *DVD Menu Language*

**Setting contents:** *Auto (Initial setting) / EN / JP / DE / ES / FR / IT / SE / RU / CN*

- When “Auto” is selected, the primary menu language among the recorded ones is played.
- As for the language abbreviation, refer to “List of Language Codes” (page 87).

## Setting of the Audio Language

Set the audio language produced from the speakers.

**Setting item:** *Audio Language*

**Setting contents:** *Auto (Initial setting) / EN / JP / DE / ES / FR / IT / SE / RU / CN*

- When “Auto” is selected, the primary audio language among the recorded ones is applied.
- As for the language abbreviation, refer to “List of Language Codes” (page 87).

## Setting of the Subtitle Language

Set the language of the subtitles displayed on the screen.

**Setting item:** *SUBT. Language*

**Setting contents:** *Auto (Initial setting) / EN / JP / DE / ES / FR / IT / SE / RU / CN*

- When “Auto” is selected, the primary subtitle language among the recorded ones is applied.
- As for the language abbreviation, refer to “List of Language Codes” (page 87).

## Changing the Country Code Setting

Set the country code for the country which you want to set the rating level (Parental lock).

**Setting item:** *Country Code*

**Setting contents:** *Auto (Initial setting) / Other*

- Auto:** The primary country code among those recorded is played.
- Other:** The setting content changes to “Other” if the desired country code is input.

- If settings are changed, the old settings are overwritten. Make a note of the current settings before making changes. The settings will be cleared if the vehicle's battery is disconnected.

- 1 Touch [Country Code Input].
- 2 Touch [◀] or [Delete All].  
Delete the displayed country number.
- 3 Touch the 4-digit country code.  
As for the country number, refer to "List of Country Codes" (page 88).
- 4 Touch [OK] to memorize the code.

## Setting the Rating Level (Parental Lock)

This function can help limit the viewing of movies to children of appropriate age levels only.

### Setting item: Parental

- If settings are changed, the old settings are overwritten. Make a note of the current settings before making changes. The memory will be cleared if the vehicle's battery is disconnected.
- On unrated discs, playback will not be restricted even if the rating level is set.
- If you want to play back a disc with parental lock, and its use is currently restricted, change the rating level and the country number in order to play back the disc.
- Once set, this rating level remains in memory until changed. To enable playback of discs of higher rating levels, or to cancel the parental lock, the setting must be changed.
- Not all discs provide a parental lock. If you are unsure about a disc, play it first to confirm. Do not leave discs accessible to young children for whom you deem them inappropriate.

- 1 Touch [Parental].  
The numeric keypad screen is displayed.
- 2 Touch the numeric keypad to input a 4-digit password.  
The initial number is 1111. Input number are displayed as "\*".
- 3 Touch [OK] to memorize the number.  
The Parental screen appears.

## Set the rating level of PARENTAL

- 4 Touch [Parental].
- 5 Touch [◀] or [▶] to turn "On".  
Select "Off" to cancel parental lock or if you do not want to set a rating level.
- 6 Touch [X] to return to the previous screen.
- 7 Touch [Parental Level]
- 8 Touch [◀] or [▶] to select the rating level (1 to 8).  
The smaller the number, the higher the restriction.
- 9 Touch [X] to return to the previous screen.

## Changing the password

- 1 Touch [Password Change].  
The numeric keypad screen is displayed.
  - 2 Touch the input screen to enter a new 4-digit password.
- Keep a note of the number somewhere safe in case you should forget it.
- 3 Touch [OK] to memorize the number.
  - 4 Touch [↩] to return to the previous screen.

### Changing the rating level temporarily

Some discs may request that you change the rating level set in the default settings during playback. In this case, the message "Do you wish to change Parental level? [OK] [Cancel]".

If this screen appears, change the level as follows:

- **To change parental level and play, touch [OK].**  
When [OK] is touched, the numeric keypad input screen is displayed. Input the 4-digit password you set in "Setting the Rating Level (Parental Lock)", then touch [OK].
- **To play without changing the parental level, touch [Cancel].**  
(If [Cancel] is touched, playback will be at the parental level set in "Setting the Rating Level (Parental Lock)".)

## Setting the TV Screen Mode

Use the procedure described below to modify the output screen according to the type of TV monitor (rear monitor) being used. If the rear monitor is not connected, the screen setting is 16:9.

### Setting item: TV Screen

#### Setting contents: 4:3LB / 4:3PS / 16:9 (Initial setting)

- For some discs, the picture may not be set to the selected screen size. (For details, refer to the explanation on the disc's jacket.)

#### 4:3 LETTER BOX:

Select this when connected to a conventional 4:3 size (normal TV aspect ratio) monitor. There may be black stripes visible at the top and bottom of the screen (when playing a 16:9 size movie). The width of these stripes will depend upon the original aspect ratio of the theatrical release of the movie.



#### 4:3 PAN-SCAN:

Select this when connected to a conventional 4:3 size monitor. The picture will fill the entire TV screen. However, due to the mismatch in aspect ratio, parts of the movie at the extreme left and right sides will not be visible (when playing a 16:9 size movie).



#### 16:9 WIDE:

Select this when connected to a wide screen TV. This is the factory setting.



## AUX Setting

[AUX] is selected on the Source setup menu in step 3. Refer to "Source Layout Setting" (page 51).

### Setting the AUX Mode

**Setting item:** *AUX In*

**Setting contents:** *Off / On (Initial setting)*

- Off: AUX source is not displayed.
- On: AUX source is displayed.

### Setting the Primary AUX Name (AUX Setup)

When AUX In is set to "ON", this setting is available.

**Setting item:** *Primary Name*

**Setting contents:** *AUX1 (Initial setting) / DVD / GAME / EXT.DVD / DVD-CHG / DVB-T / TV / USB Player (X008AU/INE-W957A only)*

- When a DVB-T tuner is connected, you can use it to connect one more External Input device. Setting the Secondary name can change the mode name display of this device.

### Setting the Secondary AUX Name

Secondary name can be set only when Primary name is set to "DVB-T" or "USB Player".

**Setting item:** *Secondary Name*

**Setting contents:** *OFF (Initial setting) / AUX2 / DVD / GAME / EXT.DVD / DVD-CHG / DVB-T\*1 / TV / USB Player (X008AU/INE-W957A only)\*2*

- \*1 If the Primary Name is DVB-T, DVB-T is not displayed as a Secondary Name option.
- \*2 If the Primary Name is USB Player, USB Player is not displayed as a Secondary Name option.
- The selected source name is displayed instead of AUX mode name.

### Setting Direct Touch Operation (X008AU/INE-W957A only)

If DVB-T is set as the Primary Name or Secondary Name, this setting is available.

**Setting item:** *Direct Touch*

**Setting contents:** *On (Initial setting) / Off*

- On: Direct Touch operation is available on the DVB-T screen.
- Off: Direct Touch operation is not available on the DVB-T screen.

### Switching the Visual Input Signal System

After setting to "On" in "Setting the AUX Mode", this setting can be carried out. The video input type can be changed.

**Setting item:** *Signal*

**Setting contents:** *Auto (Initial setting) / NTSC/PAL*

- Auto: The video input signal type (NTSC or PAL) will be automatically selected.
- NTSC/PAL: Choose the video input signal type manually.

## Setting the AUX3

Connection with external input devices is available through the iPod VIDEO connector. An optional adapter cable is required (standard RCA to 3.5ø mini-phono plug or 3.5ø to 3.5ø mini phono plug). You can also play back video connecting with an optional AV cable (4-pole mini AV plug to 3-RCA).

**Setting item: AUX3 In Sel.**

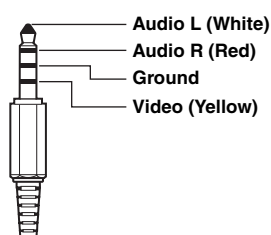
**Setting contents: iPod Video (Initial setting) / AUX3**

iPod Video: Set when connected to an iPod or iPhone.

AUX3: Set when connected to an external input device.

### ■ Usable 4-pole mini AV plug

The unit accepts the following 4-pole mini AV plug pin-out:



- Please check pin-out carefully before use of this product. Depending on the cable, there may be no picture and/or sound.
- When an iPod video is selected or the current source is AUX3, this setting cannot be adjusted.

## Setting the AUX3 Sel. (Switching the Visual Input Signal System)

After setting to "AUX3" in "Setting the AUX3 In Sel.", this setting can be carried out. The video input type can be changed.

**Setting item: AUX3 Signal**

**Setting contents: Auto (Initial setting) / NTSC/PAL**

Auto: The video input signal type (NTSC or PAL) will be automatically selected.

NTSC/PAL: Choose the video input signal type manually.

- When the current source is AUX3, this setting cannot be adjusted.

## RSE Setting

[RSE] is selected on the Source setup menu in step 3. Refer to "Source Layout Setting" (page 51).

## Setting the Rear Seat Entertainment System

Video and audio can be output to the rear monitor.

**Setting item: RSE**

**Setting contents: Off (Initial setting) / On**

- If you selected the "On" setting, set the "Remote Sensor Setting" (page 41).

## Setting the BLUETOOTH Pandora® (X008AU/INE-W957A only)

[BLUETOOTH Pandora] is selected on the Source setup menu in step3. Refer to "Source Layout Setting" (page 51). To use BLUETOOTH Pandora, set the BLUETOOTH Pandora setting to "On."

**Setting item: BLUETOOTH Pandora**

**Setting contents: Off / On (Initial Setting)**

- When "On" is set, the BLUETOOTH Pandora® source is displayed on the Top banner on the Audio/Visual screen.
- When the current source is BLUETOOTH Pandora, this setting cannot be adjusted.

## TuneIt Setting

[TuneIt] is selected on the Source setup menu in step 3. Refer to "Source Layout Setting" (page 51).

## Setting the Communication Mode with a Smartphone

Set TuneIt to USB (iPhone) when an iPhone is connected, or set to BT (Android) when an Android Smartphone is paired.

**Setting item: TuneIt**

**Setting contents: Off / USB (iPhone) (Initial setting) / BT (Android)\***

Off: No Smartphone is connected.

USB (iPhone): When an iPhone is connected to the unit's USB port, you can programme the unit's sound tuning parameters, or communicate with SNS.

BT (Android): Set this when an Android Smartphone is paired with this unit via BLUETOOTH technology. And after BLUETOOTH Audio is connected, you can programme the unit's sound tuning parameters, or communicate with SNS.


\* Not displayed when BLUETOOTH is set to Off. For details, refer to "BLUETOOTH Setting" on page 56.

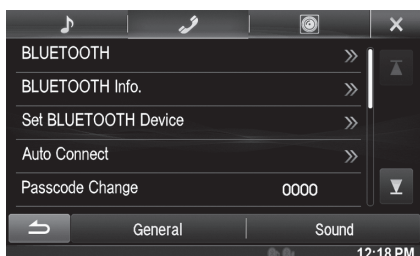
- For this function to work properly, specific applications must be installed on your Smartphone before connection. Consult your Alpine dealer or the Alpine website for details.
- Only the iPhone and certain Android Smartphones support this function.

# BLUETOOTH Setup

## BLUETOOTH Setup Operation

The following steps 1 to 5 are common operations to each “Setting item” of BLUETOOTH Setup. Refer to each section for details.

- 1 Touch **[Setup]** icon of Top banner.  
The Setup main screen is displayed.
- 2 Touch  (**BLUETOOTH**).  
The BLUETOOTH Setup screen appears.
- 3 Select the desired item.



**Setting items:** **BLUETOOTH / BLUETOOTH Info. / Set BLUETOOTH Device / Auto Connect / Passcode Change / Default Phonebook Encoding / Phone Speaker\* / Caller Volume / Microphone Level / Ring Tone Volume / Delete Call History**

\* When External AP is set to On, phone speaker cannot be adjusted.  
Refer to “Setting the External Audio Processor On/Off” (page 45)

- 4 Touch **[◀]** or **[▶]** etc., to change its setting.
  - When the pop-up window for setup is displayed, touch **[X]** to close the window after setting.
- 5 Touch **[↶]** to return to the previous screen.
  - Immediately after changing the BLUETOOTH Setup (while the system is writing data automatically) do not turn the ignition key to OFF. Otherwise, the settings may not be changed.
  - For details on how to scroll through the list, refer to “Selecting an Item in a List” (page 29).

## BLUETOOTH Setting

[BLUETOOTH] is selected on the BLUETOOTH setup menu in step 3. Refer to “BLUETOOTH Setup Operation” (page 56).

**Setting item:** **BLUETOOTH**

**Setting contents:** **Off / On (Initial setting)**

- Off: BLUETOOTH function is not used.
  - On: Select when you would like to pair your BLUETOOTH compatible phone with this unit.
- If the Bluetooth setting is “Off”, you cannot move to the BLUETOOTH setting screen.

## Displaying BLUETOOTH Information

[BLUETOOTH Info.] is selected on the BLUETOOTH setup menu in step 3. Refer to “BLUETOOTH Setup Operation” (page 56). You can display the BLUETOOTH device name and device address of this unit.

**Setting item:** **BLUETOOTH Info.**

## Registering the BLUETOOTH Device

[Set BLUETOOTH Device] is selected on the BLUETOOTH setup menu in step 3. Refer to “BLUETOOTH Setup Operation” (page 56). The BLUETOOTH device is used when a connectable BLUETOOTH compatible device is searched and connected from this unit, or a new BLUETOOTH compatible device is registered.

- 1 Touch **[Set BLUETOOTH Device]**.
- 2 Touch **[Search]** of “No Device”.  
The Device list displays up to 10 items.
- 3 Touch **[Audio]**, **[Hands-free]** or **[Both]** of the device you want to connect from the list.
  - Audio: Sets for use as an Audio device.
  - Hands-free: Sets for use as a Hands Free Device.
  - Both: Sets for use as both an Audio device and Hands Free Device.

• You can connect (pair) up to 5 BLUETOOTH compatible mobile phones.

- 4 When the device registration is complete, a message appears and the device returns to normal mode.
  - The BLUETOOTH registration process differs depending on the device version and SSP (Simple Secure Pairing). If a 4 or 6 character Passcode appears on this device, enter the Passcode using the BLUETOOTH compatible device.  
If a 6 character Passkey appears on this device, make sure the same passkey is displayed on the BLUETOOTH compatible device and touch “Yes”.
  - If all 5 devices have been registered, you cannot register a 6th device. To register another device, you need to delete one of the other 5 devices first.

### Setting the BLUETOOTH Device

Select one of 5 paired BLUETOOTH compatible devices that you previously registered.

- 1 Touch **[Set BLUETOOTH Device]**.
- 2 Touch **[Audio]** or **[Hands-free]** of the device you want to connect from the Paired Device list.

### Deleting a BLUETOOTH Device from the list

You can delete the information of a previously connected BLUETOOTH compatible device.

- 1 Touch **[Set BLUETOOTH Device]**.
- 2 Touch **[Delete]** of the BLUETOOTH compatible device to delete from the Paired Device list.
- 3 Touch **[OK]**.
  - Touching **[Cancel]** will cancel the setting.

---

## Automatic Connection setting

---

[Auto Connect] is selected on the BLUETOOTH setup menu in step 3. Refer to “BLUETOOTH Setup Operation” (page 56). If the Automatic Connecting setting is “On”, automatic connection is performed for the audio device registered in the Paired Device list.

**Setting item:** Auto Connect

**Setting contents:** Off / On (Initial setting)

---

## Setting the Passcode

---

[Passcode Change] is selected on the BLUETOOTH setup menu in step 3. Refer to “BLUETOOTH Setup Operation” (page 56). You can set the code for connecting with a BLUETOOTH compatible device.

**Setting item:** Passcode Change

### 1 Touch [Passcode Change].

A numeric keypad screen is displayed.

### 2 Enter a 4-digit passcode, and then touch [Enter].

- The initial number is 0000.
- For details on how to input the numeric keypad, refer to “Numeric Keypad Input Operations” (page 36).

---

## Changing the Character Code of the Phone Book

---

[Default Phonebook Encoding] is selected on the BLUETOOTH setup menu in step 3. Refer to “BLUETOOTH Setup Operation” (page 56). You can select the character code that is used when transferring the phone book or history from a mobile phone. If unreadable characters appear in the transferred data, select the correct character code.

**Setting item:** Default Phonebook Encoding

**Setting contents:** EU1 / EU2 (Initial setting) / Russian / Chinese / Thai / Arabic / Unicode UTF-8 / Unicode UTF-16LE / Unicode UTF-16BE

### 1 Touch [Default Phonebook Encoding].

The Character code list screen is displayed.

### 2 Touch the desired character code.

EU1: ISO 8859-1  
EU2: ISO 8859-15  
Russian: ISO 8859-5  
Chinese: GB18030  
Thai: CP874  
Arabic: CP1256  
Unicode UTF-8  
Unicode UTF-16LE  
Unicode UTF-16BE

### 3 Touch [OK].

---

## Selecting the Output Speaker

---

[Phone Speaker] is selected on the BLUETOOTH setup menu in step 3. Refer to “BLUETOOTH Setup Operation” (page 56). You can select which speaker in the car will output the audio from the phone.

**Setting item:** Phone Speaker

**Setting contents:** All (Initial setting) / Front L / Front R / Front LR

All: The sound is output from all speakers in car.  
Front L: The sound is only output from the front left speaker.  
Front R: The sound is only output from the front right speaker.  
Front LR: The sound is output from the front left and front right speakers.

- The setting cannot be adjusted during a phone call. Adjust the setting before placing a call.
- This option is not available when External AP is set to On.

---

## Adjusting the Caller Volume

---

[Caller Volume] is selected on the BLUETOOTH setup menu in step 3. Refer to “BLUETOOTH Setup Operation” (page 56). You can adjust the volume of the incoming call.

**Setting item:** Caller Volume

**Setting contents:** 1 to 11 (Initial setting: 5)

---

## Adjusting the Microphone Level

---

[Microphone Level] is selected on the BLUETOOTH setup menu in step 3. Refer to “BLUETOOTH Setup Operation” (page 56). You can adjust the transmit volume, during the call.

**Setting item:** Microphone Level

**Setting contents:** 1 to 11 (Initial setting: 5)

---

## Adjusting the Ring Tone Volume

---

[Ring Tone Volume] is selected on the BLUETOOTH setup menu in step 3. Refer to “BLUETOOTH Setup Operation” (page 56). You can adjust the receive volume, during the call.

**Setting item:** Ring Tone Volume

**Setting contents:** 1 to 11 (Initial setting: 5)

---

## Deleting All the Histories

---

[Delete Call History] is selected on the BLUETOOTH setup menu in step 3. Refer to “BLUETOOTH Setup Operation” (page 56). Dialed/Received/Missed Incoming histories are all deleted.

**Setting item:** Delete Call History

### 1 Touch [Delete Call History]

The confirmation screen is displayed.

- When there is no history, this option is not available.

### 2 Touch [OK].

All the histories are deleted.

# Camera Setup

## Camera Setup Operation

With an optional camera connected, its video is output to the monitor. When the camera is connected, set this item.

The following steps 1 to 5 are common operations to each “Setting item” of Camera Setup. Refer to each section for details.

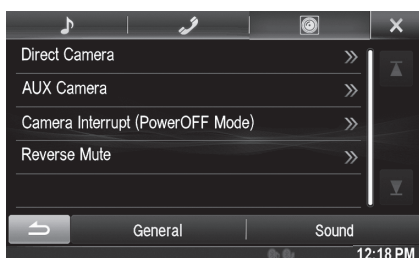
### 1 Touch [Setup] icon of Top banner.

The Setup main screen is displayed.

### 2 Touch [CAMERA].

The Camera Setup screen appears.

### 3 Select the desired item.



**Setting items:** Direct Camera / AUX Camera / Camera Interrupt (Power OFF Mode) / Reverse Mute

### 4 Touch [◀] or [▶] etc., to change its setting.

- When the pop-up window for setup is displayed, touch [X] to close the window after setting.

### 5 Touch [↶] to return to the previous screen.

- Immediately after changing the Camera Setup (while the system is writing data automatically) do not turn the ignition key to OFF. Otherwise, the settings may not be changed.
- For details on how to scroll through the list, refer to “Selecting an Item in a List” (page 29).

## Direct Camera Setting

[Direct Camera] is selected on the Camera setup menu in step 3. Refer to “Camera Setup Operation” (page 58).

### Setting the Camera Input

**Setting item:** Camera Select / Guide Adjustment<sup>\*1</sup>

**Setting contents:** Off (Initial setting) / Front / Rear<sup>\*2</sup>

Front: Front camera  
Rear: Rear camera

<sup>\*1</sup> If “Camera Select” is set to “Off”, this option is not available.

<sup>\*2</sup> If “Camera Select” in AUX Camera Setting is set to “Rear”, “Rear” cannot be set in Direct Camera Setting.

### Switching video patterns for Rear camera & Front camera

The video pattern can be changed when connected to HCE-C210RD/ HCE-C212F.

**Setting item:** Guide Adjustment

### 1 Touch [Guide Adjustment].

The camera guide adjustment screen is displayed.

### 2 Touch [Back], [Panorama], [Corner], or [Top].

The view will change to the selected view.

- [Back] will not appear for the Front camera.

### 3 Touch [↶] to return to the previous screen.

- For an explanation of video patterns, see the camera Owner’s Manual.

### Adjusting the Rear/Front Camera Guide

If you select “Rear” or “Front”, you can adjust the camera guide position.

**Setting item:** Guide Adjustment

### 1 Touch [Guide Adjustment].

The camera guide adjustment screen is displayed.

- If the video pattern is set to “Corner”, the camera guide will not be displayed.

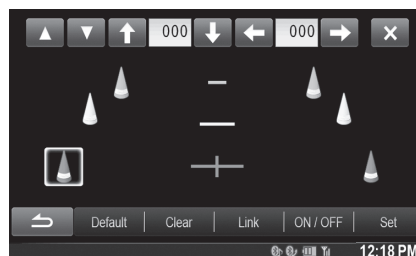
### 2 Touch [Adjust].

- If [Adjust] does not appear, proceed to step 3.

### 3 Touch the guide you intend to adjust.

Guide line can also be selected by touching [▲] [▼].

### ■ Display example for rear camera mode





## ■ Display example for front camera mode



### 4 Touch [↑], [↓], [←] or [→] to adjust the position of the guide.

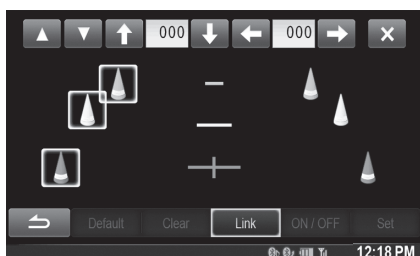
- Touching [Clear] clears adjustments and returns to the setting before guide line alteration.

### 5 After the adjustment is completed, touch [Set].

## ■ Adjusting guides simultaneously (for Rear camera only)

### 1 Touch [Link].

The 3 vertical guides of the currently-selected guide link together, allowing them to be adjusted simultaneously.



## ■ Turning guide display ON/OFF

Turning the selected guide off.

### 1 Touch [ON/OFF].

The currently selected guide will turn off.

### 2 To turn the guide on, touch [ON/OFF] again.

- Guides that are turned off are still adjustable.

## ■ Returning guides to default.

### 1 Touch [Default].

A message window will appear.

### 2 Touch [OK].

Adjusted values will return to default settings.

## AUX Camera Setting

[AUX Camera] is selected on the Camera setup menu in step 3. Refer to "Camera Setup Operation" (page 58).

### Setting the Camera Input

**Setting item:** Camera Select / Camera Signal\*<sup>1</sup> / Guide Adjustment\*<sup>1</sup>

**Setting contents:** Off / Rear\*<sup>2</sup> (Initial setting) / OTHER

Rear: Rear camera

OTHER: Side camera, Room camera, etc.

\*<sup>1</sup> If "Camera Select" is set to "Off", this option is not available.

\*<sup>2</sup> If "Camera Select" in Direct Camera Setting is set to "Rear", "Rear" cannot be set in AUX Camera Setting.

### Setting the AUX Camera Signal Input

When the AUX camera is connected, the video input signal type can be chosen.

**Further setting item:** Camera Signal

**Setting contents:** NTSC (Initial setting) / PAL

### Adjusting the Rear Camera Guide

If you select "Rear" you can adjust the camera guide position.

**Setting item:** Guide Adjustment

### 1 Touch [Guide Adjustment].

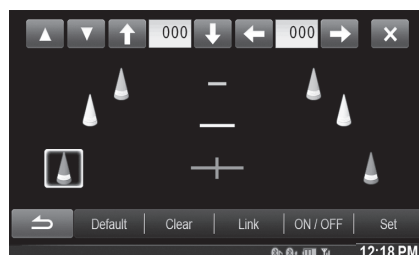
The camera guide adjustment screen is displayed.

### 2 Touch [Adjust].

- If [Adjust] does not appear, proceed to step 3.

### 3 Touch the guide you intend to adjust.

Guide line can also be selected by touching [▲] [▼].



### 4 Touch [↑], [↓], [←] or [→] to adjust the position of the guide.

- Touching [Clear] clears adjustments and returns to the setting before guide line alteration.

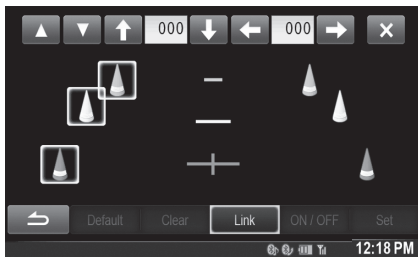
### 5 After the adjustment is completed, touch [Set].

## ■ Adjusting guides simultaneously (for Rear camera only)

### Touch [Link].

The 3 vertical guides of the currently-selected guide link together, allowing them to be adjusted simultaneously.





## ■ Turning guide display ON/OFF

Turning the selected guide off.

### 1 Touch **[ON/OFF]**.

The currently selected guide will turn off.

### 2 To turn the guide on, touch **[ON/OFF]** again.

- *Guides that are turned off are still adjustable.*

## Returning guides to default.

### 1 Touch **[Default]**.

A message window will appear.

### 2 Touch **[OK]**.

Adjusted values will return to default settings.

## Camera Interrupt Setting (Power OFF Mode)

[Camera Interrupt] is selected on the Camera setup menu in step 3. Refer to “Camera Setup Operation” (page 58).

You can set whether to display the rear camera image when the gear lever is moved to the reverse (R) position while the unit is turned off.

**Setting item: Camera Interrupt (Power OFF Mode)**

**Setting contents: On (Initial setting) / Off**

- On: The rear camera image is displayed
- Off: The rear camera image is not displayed

## Reverse Mute Setting

[Reverse Mute] is selected on the Camera setup menu in step 3. Refer to “Camera Setup Operation” (page 58).

You can set whether to mute the playing music when the gear lever is moved to the reverse (R) position.

**Setting item: Reverse Mute**

**Setting contents: Off / On (Initial Setting)**

- On: The playing music is muted when the gear lever is moved to the reverse (R) position.
- Off: Continue playing music even though the gear lever is moved to the reverse (R) position.

# BLUETOOTH Operation

## Setup Before Using

### About BLUETOOTH

BLUETOOTH is a wireless technology allowing communication between a mobile device or personal computer over short distances. This enables a hands-free call or data transmission between BLUETOOTH compatible devices. BLUETOOTH transmission is available in the unlicensed 2.4 GHz spectrum if the distance between devices is within 10 metres. For details, refer to the BLUETOOTH website (<http://www.bluetooth.com/>).

- Depending on the BLUETOOTH version, a BLUETOOTH compatible device may not be able to communicate with this unit.
- Proper function of this unit with all BLUETOOTH compatible devices is not guaranteed. For handling of the BLUETOOTH compatible device, consult your ALPINE dealer or ALPINE website.
- Depending on the surroundings, BLUETOOTH wireless connection may be unstable.
- When you place a call, or perform setup operations, be sure to stop your car in a safe place.
- Depending on the connected BLUETOOTH compatible device(s), the function may differ. Also refer to the Owner's Manual of the connected device(s).

### About the Hands-Free Phone

Hands-free calls are possible when using a HFP (Hands-Free Profile) compatible mobile phone with this unit.

- Avoid performing a hands-free call in heavy traffic or on narrow or winding streets.
- Close the windows while calling to reduce background noise.
- If both calling parties are using hands-free devices, or the call is made in a noisy location, difficulty hearing the other person's voice is normal.
- Depending on telephone line conditions or certain mobile devices used, voices may sound unnatural.
- When using a microphone, speak as directly as you can into the microphone to obtain the best sound quality.
- Certain mobile phone features are dependent on the capabilities and settings of your service provider's network. Additionally, certain features may not be activated by your service provider, and/or the provider's network settings may limit the feature's functionality. Always contact your service provider about feature availability and functionality.

All features, functionality, and other product specifications, as well as the information contained in the Owner's Manual are based upon the latest available information and are believed to be accurate at the time of printing.

Alpine reserves the right to change or modify any information or specifications without notice or obligation.

## Before Using BLUETOOTH

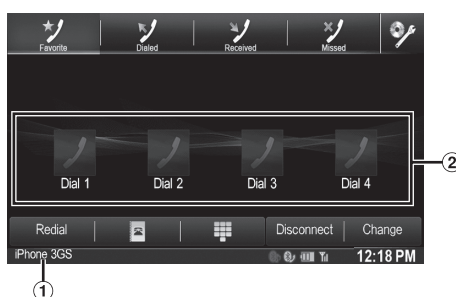
Before using the hands-free phone/audio function, the following settings need to be made.

- 1 Set "BLUETOOTH" to "On" (see page 56).
- 2 Register a BLUETOOTH device in this unit (see page 56).

- Refer to "BLUETOOTH Setting" (page 56).
- You can search for this unit using a BLUETOOTH compatible device, and then connect that BLUETOOTH compatible device to this unit. The device name of this unit is "ALPINE NAVI" and the initial number of the passcode is "0000". Also refer to the Owner's Manual of the connected device(s).

## Hands-Free Phone Control

### ■ Display example for Phone menu screen



- ① BLUETOOTH devices Name
- ② Favourites Display: Short Cut icon  
Dialed/Received/Missed Display: Each histories icon

## Connecting a BLUETOOTH Device

Registering a BLUETOOTH device in X008AU/X008EU/INE-W957A/INE-W957E enables automatic connection. If it does not connect automatically, run through the connection procedure again.

- 1 Press the (**PHONE**) button.  
The Phone menu screen is displayed.
- 2 Touch **[Connect]**.  
BLUETOOTH connection will start.

### Disconnecting the BLUETOOTH Connection


**Touch [Disconnect].**  
The BLUETOOTH connection is disconnected.

---

## Changing the connecting BLUETOOTH Device

---

If multiple BLUETOOTH devices are registered in this device, you can change the connection among the registered devices.



- 1 Press the  (PHONE) button.**  
The Phone menu screen is displayed.
  - 2 Touch [Change].**  
The Set Bluetooth Device screen is displayed.
  - 3 Touch [Audio] or [Hands-free] of the selected device.**  
The connection will transfer to the selected device.
- You can check registered shortcut dialing by touching the BLUETOOTH Device List.  
For how to assign one-touch dialing, refer to “Assigning as a Short Cut Dialing Number” (page 66).

---

## Answering a Call

---

Incoming calls are announced by the received call ring tone and a displayed message (PHONE No., etc.).

- 1 An incoming call triggers the ringtone and an incoming call display.**
  - 2 Touch [] or press  (PHONE) button.**  
The call starts.
- During a call, the audio for the current mode on the unit is muted. After calling, playback will resume.
  - When the caller's number is transmitted to the system, if the caller's name is stored in the phone book, the name is displayed. If the name is not stored, the number is displayed. When neither the name or the number is unavailable, “Unknown” is displayed.

### Adjusting ringtone volume

The ringtone volume is adjustable on the incoming call message screen.

Touch [] or [] for “ Vol.”.

---

## Hanging up the Telephone

---

Touch [].  
The call finishes.

---


## Calling

---

Use the Phone menu screen to make a phone call.






### Using Short Cut Dialing to Make a Call

You can assign up to 4 phone numbers for one-touch dialing to make a call easily. For how to assign one-touch dialing, refer to “Assigning as a Short Cut Dialing Number” (page 66).

- 1 Press the  (PHONE) button.**  
The phone menu screen is displayed.
  - 2 Touch [ Favourites].**
  - 3 Touch [Dial1], [Dial2], [Dial3] or [Dial4].**  
The phone call is sent to the stored number.
- Pressing and holding [Dial1], [Dial2], [Dial3] or [Dial4] displays the Shortcut Dialing Edit screen. The only available editing operation is deletion.
  - If a name has been registered, the name is displayed on the shortcut button.




### Dialing a Number In Call History

You can use 3 types of history to make a phone call. Call History saves up to 60 phone numbers. If the limit is exceeded, the oldest phone number is deleted.




- 1 Press the  (PHONE) button.**  
The phone menu screen is displayed.
  - 2 Touch [ Dialed], [ Received] or [ Missed].**  
The last four histories are displayed.
  - 3 Touch the name from the call history.**  
The details screen of the call history is displayed.
- To display all the histories, touch [All]. Touching [Delete] deletes the selected histories.
- 4 Touch [].**  
The phone call is started.

## Dialing a Number In the Phone Book

You can use the phone book of the mobile phone to make a phone call. Before using, you need to transfer the phone book from the mobile phone to the system. For details on how to transfer the phone book, refer to "Synchronizing the Phone Book" (page 65).

- 1 **Press the  (PHONE) button.**  
The phone menu screen is displayed.
- 2 **Touch [  ].**
- 3 **Touch the person name or the telephone number from the Phone Book list.**
- 4 **Touch [  ].**  
The phone call is started.


## Entering a Phone Number to Make a Call

- 1 **Press the  (PHONE) button.**  
The phone menu screen is displayed.
- 2 **Touch [  ].**  
The number input screen appears.
- 3 **Enter the phone number you wish to call.**  
• You can enter up to 31 digits.
- 4 **Touch [  ].**
- 5 **Touch [Call].**  
The phone call is started.

**USER1/USER2**

## Redial Function

You can redial the person you have previously called.

- 1 **Press the  (PHONE) button.**  
The phone menu screen is displayed.
- 2 **Touch [Redial].**  
The number is redialed.
- 3 **Touch [Call].**  
The phone call is started.

## Using Voice Recognition function

You can use Siri function of your iPhone or make a telephone call by using voice operation of your smartphone.

### Using Siri



You can use the Siri function of your iPhone. To use this function, set the Siri setting of your iPhone to ON.

- Connect your iPhone to the unit via Bluetooth, then set to "Hands-free" or "Both" (page 56).
- The available functions differ depending on the connected iPhone.
- Ask Siri to play a track from the music library applies only to USB source.
- Siri and other streaming services are enabled by connecting to compatible smartphones that are able to receive data. Please ensure that cellular data and/or Wifi is turned on in the smartphone to enjoy these features.
- Extensive use of Siri or other streaming services may increase your phone's data usage. Please check with your phone company to ensure you have an appropriate Data plan.

- 1 **Press and hold the  (PHONE) button for at least 3 seconds.**






The Voice Control mode screen is displayed.

- 2 **Speak into the microphone supplied with this unit.**
  - If no speech is detected, the unit may pause depending on version of the connected iPhone. In that case, touch the microphone icon [  ] in the centre of the Voice Control mode screen. You can continue to use the Voice Control mode.
- 3 **To finish the Voice Control mode, touch [X] or press and hold the  (PHONE) button for at least 3 seconds.**
  - Depending on the iPhone, the Siri function may finish automatically.

### Adjusting the volume

Adjust the speaker/microphone volumes in Voice Control mode. Perform the same procedure to adjust the speaker/microphone volumes of Hands-Free Phone.

**Touch [  ] or [  ] of  Vol.**  
Adjust the speaker volume.

**Touch [  ] or [  ] of  Vol.**  
Adjust the microphone volume.

### Stopping input to the microphone

If the surrounding sound (road noise, etc.) is loud, you may wish to cut input to the microphone for 3 seconds.

**Touch [   ].**

## Voice Dial Function

You can make a telephone call by using voice operation.

- Connect your smartphone to the unit via Bluetooth, then set to "Hands-free" or "Both" (page 56).

- 1 Press and hold the  (**PHONE**) button for at least 3 seconds.



The Voice Dial mode screen is activated.

- 2 Say the telephone number\* or name\* you want to call, into the microphone.


\* The number and name depend on the voice dial information stored in the smartphone.

- 3 To finish the Voice Dial mode, touch [X] or press and hold the  (**PHONE**) button for at least 3 seconds.


- You can perform this operation only when a voice dial compatible smartphone is connected.
- The Voice Dial function performance depends on the recognition range of the smartphone and mounting location of the microphone. Note when the microphone is mounted.
- Voice dial operation depends on the function being available on the smartphone. For details, refer to the owner's manual of the smartphone.
- Depending on the smartphone, the Voice Dial operation may finish automatically.

### Adjusting the volume

Adjust the speaker/microphone volume in Voice Dial mode. Perform the same procedure to adjust the speaker/microphone volume of Hands-Free Phone.

Touch [◀] or [▶] of  Vol. .

Adjust the speaker volume.

Touch [◀] or [▶] of  Vol. .

Adjust the microphone volume.

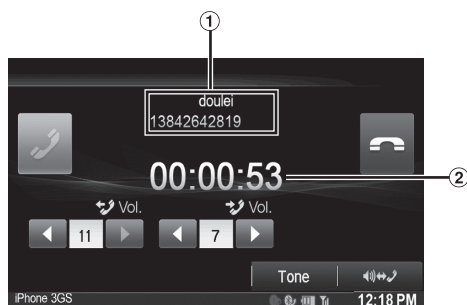
### Stopping input to the microphone

If the surrounding sound (road noise, etc.) is loud, you may wish to cut input to the microphone for 3 seconds.

Touch [X  ].

## Operations During a Conversation

### Display example



- ① Name and phone number
- ② Conversation time

### Adjusting the Speech Volume

You can adjust the transmit volume and receive volume respectively.

Touch [◀] or [▶] for "Vol.".

 : Outgoing volume

 : Incoming volume

You can adjust the volume in 11 levels.

Touch [◀] to turn down the volume. Touch [▶] to turn up the volume.

### Changing the Voice Output

The voice output for calls is switchable between car speakers and the mobile phone speaker.

Touch [] ↔ .

- Depending on the mobile phone, this operation may not be possible.

### DTMF (Touch-Tone) Function

Transmits a DTMF (Touch-Tone) during a call.

- 1 Touch [TONE].

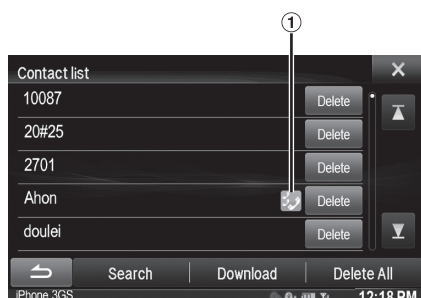
The number input screen appears.

- 2 Input number.

- You can transmit a Touch-Tone signal during a call.
- Touching and holding "0" initiates "+" tone transmission.

## Phone Book Function

### Display example for Phone Book screen



- ① An icon is displayed to indicate that multiple phone numbers are registered under an entry.

### Synchronizing the Phone Book

You can synchronize the system's phone book with the mobile phone's phone book.

- 1 Press the **(PHONE)** button.  
The phone menu screen is displayed.
  - 2 Touch [**☎**].
  - 3 Touch [**Download**].
  - 4 Touch [**SYNC**].  
Synchronization of the phone books starts.
- You can store up to 1,000 phone numbers in the phone book for USER1 and USER2, respectively.
  - You can store up to 5 phone numbers by one person's name.

### Adding the Phone Book

- 1 Press the **(PHONE)** button.  
The phone menu screen is displayed.
  - 2 Touch [**☎**].
  - 3 Touch [**Download**].
  - 4 Touch [**Add**].  
Stays on standby for connection of the mobile phone.
- Touch [**Cancel**] to cancel the standby mode.
- 5 The mobile phone accesses this unit and then transfers the phone book from the mobile phone to this unit.
- Mobile phone connection is cancelled while the phone book is being transferred.

## Deleting the Phone Book Entries

### Deleting One Entry from the Phone Book

- 1 Press the **(PHONE)** button.  
The Phone menu screen is displayed.
- 2 Touch [**☎**].  
The Phone Book screen is displayed.
- 3 Touch [**Delete**] of the phone number you intend to delete.  
The confirmation screen is displayed.  
If multiple phone numbers are registered, they are all deleted.
- 4 Touch [**OK**].  
The selected number is deleted.

### Deleting All Entries from the Phone Book

- 1 Press the **(PHONE)** button.  
The Phone menu screen is displayed.
- 2 Touch [**☎**].  
The Phone Book screen is displayed.
- 3 Touch [**Delete All**].  
The confirmation screen is displayed.
- 4 Touch [**OK**].  
All entries of the phone book are deleted.

## Assigning as a Short Cut Dialing Number

### Assigning from Call History

- 1 Press the **(PHONE)** button.  
The Phone menu screen is displayed.
- 2 Touch **[Dialled]**, **[Received]** or **[Missed]**.  
The last four histories are displayed.
- 3 Touch the person name you intend to assign as the Short Cut dialing number.  
The details screen of the Phone book is displayed.
  - To display all the histories, touch **[All]**. Touching **[Delete]** deletes the selected histories.
- 4 Touch **[Preset]**.  
The details screen for the Short Cut is displayed.
- 5 Touch **[Save]**.  
The phone number is assigned to the selected Short Cut dialing number.
  - If Dial1, Dial2, Dial3 or Dial4 is already registered, it is overwritten.
  - Touch **[Delete]** to delete an assigned short cut dialing number.

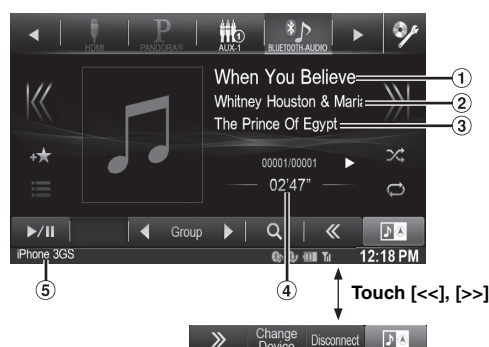
### Assigning from the Phone Book

- 1 Press the **(PHONE)** button.  
The Phone menu screen is displayed.
- 2 Touch **[P]**.  
The Phone Book screen is displayed.
- 3 Touch the phone number you intend to assign as the Short Cut dialing number.  
The details screen of the Phone book is displayed.
- 4 Touch **[Preset]**.  
The details screen for the Short Cut is displayed.
- 5 Touch **[Save]**.  
The phone number is assigned to the selected Short Cut dialing number.
  - If Dial1, Dial2, Dial3 or Dial4 is already registered, it is overwritten.
  - Touch **[Delete]** to delete an assigned short cut dialing number.

## BLUETOOTH Audio

If a BLUETOOTH compatible mobile phone, portable player, etc. is connected by wireless, you can play back a song (operation is controllable from the unit).

### Display example for BLUETOOTH Audio main screen



- ① Song title
  - ② Artist title
  - ③ Album title
  - ④ Elapsed time
  - ⑤ BLUETOOTH devices Name
- The displayed onscreen buttons may differ depending on the AVRCP version.
  - Status Indicator/Song title/Artist title/Album title/Elapsed time do not display for AVRCP Ver. 1.0.
  - To play back audio, a mobile phone or a portable player conforming to A2DP (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile) or AVRCP (Audio/Video Remote Control Profile) is required.  
Not all functions work with all devices.
  - During a call, sound on the BLUETOOTH audio source is paused.
- Compatible AVRCP versions: 1.0, 1.3, 1.4**
- Available functions may differ depending on the AVRCP version.

## Playback

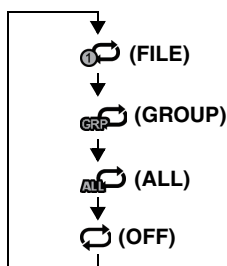
- 1 Press the **♪** button.
  - 2 Touch **[BLUETOOTH-AUDIO]** of Top banner.
  - 3 Touch **[|<<]** or **[>>|]** to select the desired track (file).
- Returning to the beginning of the current file:**  
Touch **[|<<]**.
- Fast backward the current file:**  
Touch and hold **[|<<]**.
- Advance to the beginning of the next file:**  
Touch **[>>|]**.
- Fast forward the current file:**  
Touch and hold **[>>|]**.
- 4 To pause playback, touch **[▶/||]**.

## Repeat Play

Available for AVRCPP Ver. 1.3 and 1.4 only.

**Touch [↺] during playback.**

The repeat mode switches every time the button is touched.



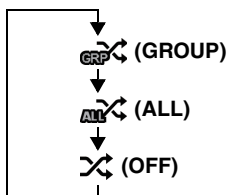
- Operations may differ depending on the connected BLUETOOTH compatible device.

## M.I.X. (Random Play)

Available for AVRCPP Ver. 1.3 and 1.4 only.

**Touch [⌂] during playback.**

The M.I.X. mode switches every time [⌂] is touched.



- Operations may differ depending on the connected BLUETOOTH compatible device.

## Selecting Groups

Available for AVRCPP Ver. 1.3 and 1.4 only.

**Touch [◀ Group] or [Group ▶] to select the group.**

## Search Function

Available for AVRCPP Ver. 1.4 only.

The displayed list differs with the connected BLUETOOTH device.

**Touch [🔍 (Search)] of Bottom banner during playback.**

Select the track, etc., you want to listen to from the displayed list.

# Auxiliary Device (Optional)

## Operating Auxiliary Devices (Optional)

To operate devices connected to the AUX terminals of X008AU/X008EU/INE-W957A/INE-W957E, follow the procedure described below.

- Set AUX In to “On”. Refer to “Setting the AUX Mode” (page 54).
- Depending on the connected unit, the onscreen buttons may not work, or their operation may differ.

### ⚠ WARNING

It is dangerous (and illegal in many states) for the driver to watch TV/video while driving the vehicle. The driver may be distracted from looking ahead and an accident could occur.

Install the X008AU/X008EU/INE-W957A/INE-W957E correctly so that the driver cannot watch TV/video unless the vehicle is stopped and the emergency brake is applied.

If the X008AU/X008EU/INE-W957A/INE-W957E is not installed correctly, the driver will be able to watch TV/video while driving the vehicle and may be distracted from looking ahead and cause an accident. The driver or other people could be severely injured.

- If you try to activate the auxiliary device while driving, the display will show the warning-Picture off for your safety.

- 1 Press the button.
- 2 Touch [AUX1]\*<sup>1</sup>, [AUX2]\*<sup>1</sup> or [AUX3]\*<sup>2</sup> of Top banner.  
The AUX mode screen is displayed.

\*<sup>1</sup> The name which is given as the mode name in “Setting the Primary AUX Name (AUX Setup)” (page 54) and “Setting the Secondary AUX Name” (page 54) is displayed.

\*<sup>2</sup> When “Setting the AUX3” (page 55), AUX3 appears when setting “AUX3” only.

### AUX Operation Screen Display During Video File Playback

**Touch the screen.**

The AUX operation screen is displayed.



## ■ Example for AUX1, AUX2, AUX3, DVD, Game mode display



- The operation screen changes to the visual screen in the AUX mode for 5 seconds after an operation has been performed. To hide the AUX operation screen, touch the video display area.
- Touch the display panel to display the operation screen again.
- Setting the AUX name for EXT.DVD, DVD-CHG, DVB-T, and TV mode displays their individual operation switches and enables operation. Refer to “Setting the Primary AUX Name (AUX Setup)” (page 54) and “Setting the Secondary AUX Name” (page 54).
- The direct touch feature is available in USB Player mode. Directly touch operation switches displayed on the screen to operate.

## Operating an External DVD Player

To operate an External DVD player (Optional), set “Setting the Primary AUX Name (AUX Setup)” (page 54) or “Setting the Secondary AUX Name” (page 54) to “EXT.DVD”.

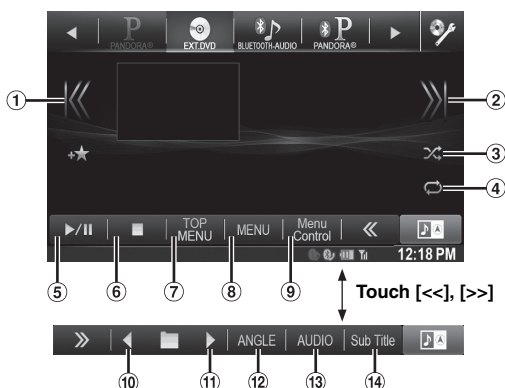
### Change to the External DVD Mode

- 1 Press the button.
- 2 Touch [EXT.DVD] of Top banner.  
The display shows the EXT. DVD mode screen.

### About the DVD Operation Screen

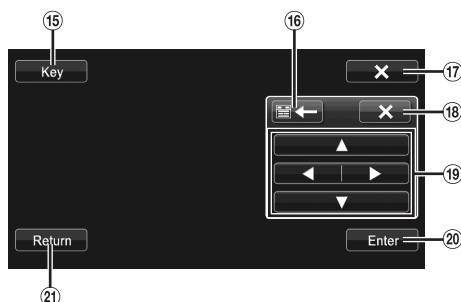
When the external DVD player playback screen is displayed, you can touch the screen to display the operation screen. For details on how to operate, refer to the Owner’s Manual of the connected DVD player.

### ■ External DVD player display example



- ① [K<<]  
Touch the switch to go back to the beginning of the current chapter/track/file. Touch the switch once more to find the beginning of the previous chapter/track/file. Touch and hold to fast reverse.
- ② [>>]  
Touch the switch to advance to the beginning of the next chapter/track/file. Touch and hold to fast forward.
- ③ [X]  
Starts/Stop M.I.X. play.
- ④ [R]  
Starts/Stop repeat play.
- ⑤ [▶/||]  
Switches between play and pause.
- ⑥ [■]  
Touching during play initiates a pre stop. Touching again stops play.
- ⑦ [Top Menu]  
Calls up the Top Menu screen.
- ⑧ [Menu]  
Calls up the Menu screen.
- ⑨ [Menu Control]  
Calls up the menu operation mode.
- ⑩ [◀]  
Switches the programme/playlist/folder down.
- ⑪ [▶]  
Switches the programme/playlist/folder up.
- ⑫ [Angle]  
Switches angle.
- ⑬ [Audio]  
Switches audio.
- ⑭ [Sub Title]  
Switches sub titles.

### ■ Menu operation mode screen display example



- ⑮ [Key]  
The menu operation mode will be displayed.
- ⑯ [◀], [▶]  
Moves key panel location.
- ⑰ [X]  
Closes menu operation mode.
- ⑱ [X]  
Closes key panel.
- ⑲ [▲], [◀], [▼], [▶]  
Moves menu cursor.
- ⑳ [Enter]  
Determines the selected item.
- ㉑ [Return]  
Returns to the previous item/screen.

## Operating an External DVD Changer

To operate an External DVD changer (Optional), set “Setting the Primary AUX Name (AUX Setup)” (page 54) or “Setting the Secondary AUX Name” (page 54) to “DVD-CHG”.

### Change to the External DVD Changer Mode

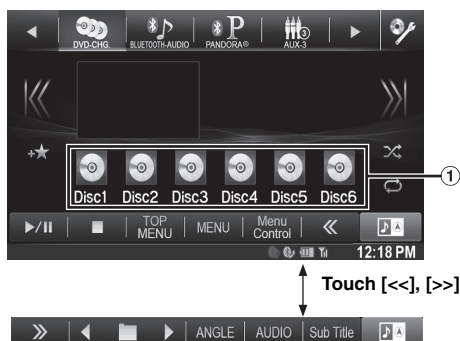
- 1 Press the  button.
- 2 Touch **[DVD-CHG]** of Top banner.  
The display shows the DVD-CHG mode screen.

### About the DVD Changer Operation Screen

When the External DVD changer playback screen is displayed, you can touch the screen to display the operation screen. For details on how to operate, refer to the Owner's Manual of the connected DVD changer.

- The DVD-CHG operation mode screen and the Menu operation mode screen are the same as the external DVD player operation screen. Refer to “Operating an External DVD Player”.

### External DVD changer display example 3/3 (Info mode)



- ① [Disc1]-[Disc6]  
Selects a Disc.

## Operating the Mobile Digital TV Receiver (DVB-T)

To operate the Mobile Digital TV Receiver (DVB-T) (Optional), set “Setting the Primary AUX Name (AUX Setup)” (page 54) or “Setting the Secondary AUX Name” (page 54) to “DVB-T”.

### Changing to the Mobile Digital TV Receiver (DVB-T) Mode

- 1 Press the  button.
- 2 Touch **[DVB-T]** of Top banner.  
The display shows the DVB-T mode screen.

### About the DVB-T operation screen

When you touch the screen in the DVB-T mode, the operation screen is displayed. For details on how to operate, refer to the Owner's Manual of the connected Digital TV Receiver (DVB-T).

### Menu operation mode screen display example



- ① [<]  
Switches the Channel number / favourite channel number down.
- ② [>]  
Switches the Channel number / favourite channel number up.
- ③ [TUNE] (Channel or FAV)  
Switches between the Channel mode and the favourite channel mode.
- ④ [EPG]  
Call up the Electronic Programme Guide (EPG).
- ⑤ [MENU]  
Call up the menu screen.
- ⑥ [Menu Control]  
Call up the menu operation mode.
- ⑦ [A/V]  
Switches the source.
- ⑧ [Scan]  
Touch the switch to start the scan procedure.

- If the setting for “Setting Direct Touch Operation (X008AU/INE-W957A only)” (page 54) is set to “On”, direct touch operation is possible. Directly touch operation switches displayed on the screen to operate. To display the operation screen, touch **[Control]**.

## Operating a TV

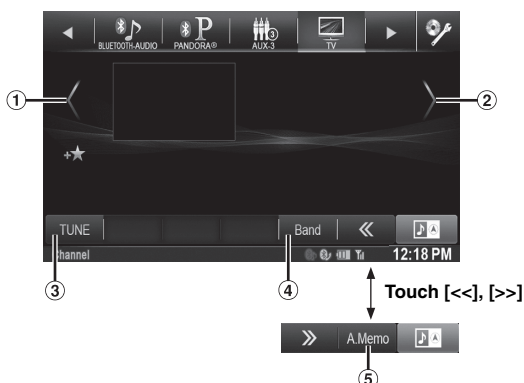
To operate a TV Receiver (TV) (Optional), set “Setting the Primary AUX Name (AUX Setup)” (page 54) or “Setting the Secondary AUX Name” (page 54) to “TV”.

### Change to the TV mode

- 1 Press the **♪** button.
- 2 Touch **[TV]** of Top banner.  
The display shows the TV mode screen.

### About the TV operation screen

When the TV playback screen is displayed, you can touch the screen to display the operation screen. For details on how to operate, refer to the Owner's Manual of the connected TV.



- ① [**<**], [**<<**]  
Switches the Channel number / Preset channel down.
- ② [**>**], [**>>**]  
Switches the Channel number / Preset channel up.
- ③ **[TUNE]** (Channel or PRESET or MANUAL)  
Switches amongst Channel mode, Preset mode, and Manual mode.
- ④ **[Band]**  
Switches the band.
- ⑤ **[A.Memo]**  
The tuner automatically seeks and stores stations.

## Camera Operation (Optional)

When an optional camera is connected, the view video of camera can be output to the monitor.

Front camera or Rear camera can be connected to this unit.

Depending on your camera, please choose the connection method (Direct or AUX) and camera type (Front, Rear or OTHER) first. For details, refer to “Camera Setup” (page 58).

### Front camera:

When the HCE-C212F is connected, conditions in front of the vehicle, such as objects, people and other hazards, can be seen.

### Rear camera:

If an HCE-C305R/HCE-C300R/HCE-C210RD/HCE-C117D/HCE-C107D/HCE-C115/HCE-C110D/HCE-C155/HCE-157D camera is connected, when the vehicle is reversed, the rear camera view (guide marks for vehicle width and available distance) is displayed automatically on the screen of this unit.

### Other camera:

Set when connecting to a camera other than the Front camera or Rear camera, such as a room camera and side camera.

*You can adjust the quality of the camera image.  
Setting items: **Live Contrast / Bright / Colour / Contrast**  
Refer to “Visual Setting” (page 42).*

## Rear Camera Operation

Set “Rear” for “Direct Camera Setting” (page 58) or “AUX Camera Setting” (page 59).

### Displaying the rear view video while the car is in reverse

- 1 **Shift the gear lever to the reverse (R) position.**  
The rear view image is displayed while the car remains in reverse.
- 2 **If you shift the gear lever to a position other than reverse (R), the monitor returns to the previous screen.**
  - Never depend solely on the camera when backing up. Always turn and look and only use the camera for additional assistance.
  - This function is effective when the reverse wire is properly connected.

## Switching the Image Pattern for the Rear Camera

If the camera has a view switch function, the Direct Change switch is displayed.

### 1 Touch the screen when the image from the rear camera is displayed.

The operation screen is displayed on the screen.

- After a 5-second time-out, the operation screen returns to the camera display screen.

### 2 Touch [Back], [Panorama], [Corner] or [Top].

The image pattern changes.

[Back]: Rear View  
[Panorama]: Panorama View  
[Corner]: Corner View  
[Top]: Ground View

- For detailed information about image patterns, see the camera Owner's Manual.

## Guide Display ON/OFF Setting

### 1 Touch the screen when the image from the camera is displayed.

The operation screen is displayed on the screen.

- After a 5-second time-out, the operation screen returns to the camera display screen.

### 2 Touch [Guide OFF] on the Rear camera display screen.

The guide disappears, and then the [Guide OFF] switch changes to [Guide ON].

### 3 Touch [Guide ON] to turn on the guide.

## Adjusting the Caution Display Location

### 1 Touch the screen when the image from the camera is displayed.

The operation screen is displayed on the screen.

- After a 5-second time-out, the operation screen returns to the camera display screen.

### 2 Touch [Caution ▲].

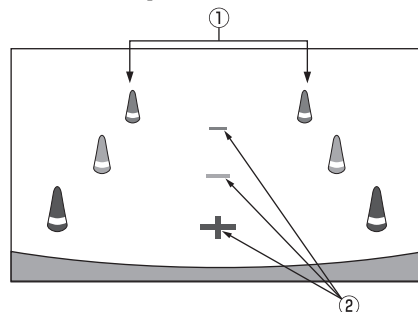
- For each touch, the caution location moves to the top or bottom of the screen.

## About the Rear Camera Guide

To display the guide, set "Guide Display ON/OFF Setting" (page 71) to On. Also, to adjust the guide, refer to "Adjusting the Rear/Front Camera Guide" (page 58). You can also turn off the guide in the Rear camera display screen.

### ■ Indication mark meaning

When the car is put into reverse gear, the monitor switches to the rear view camera image. Guides appear to help visualize the car's width and distance from the rear bumper.



#### ① Car width extension marks (red, yellow and green in order of distance)

If properly calibrated, the marks indicate the car's width. This helps guide the car's path when backing up in a straight line.

The marks represent the distance from the rear of the car (from the rear end of the bumper).

- The marks do not move in synchronization with the steering wheel.

#### ② Distance guidance marks

The marks represent the distance from the rear of the car (from the rear end of the bumper).

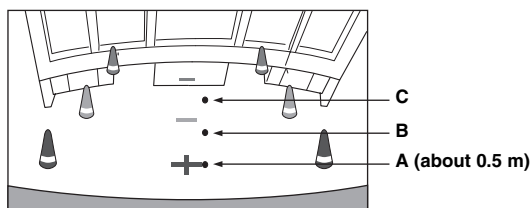
- The marks do not move in synchronization with the steering wheel.
- Each centre position of the mark represents about 0.5 m (red), about 1 m (yellow) and about 2 m (green) behind.

- Depending on the condition of the car or road surface, the range of vision may vary.
- The camera has a limited range of vision. Objects at extreme angles to the camera (e.g. under the bumper or at opposite ends of the bumper) may not be in its field-of-vision.
- The rear camera image may have a tint which is different from the actual surroundings.
- Depending on the car, the guidance may deviate to the right or left. This is not a malfunction.

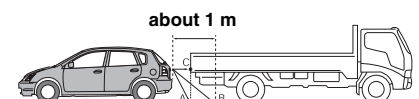
## Distance guidance mark

The distance guides represent the ground level distance from the rear bumper. It is difficult to accurately estimate the distance to objects above ground level.

<Screen>



<Positions of A, B and C>



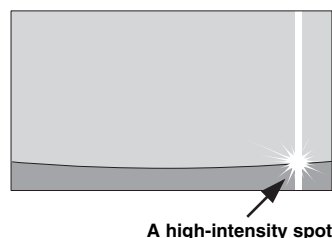
In the screen, according to the distance guidance marks, the truck seems to be parked about 1 m away (at the position B). In actual fact, however, if you reversed to position A, you would collide with the truck.

In the screen, positions A, B and C seem to be located in order of proximity. However, in actual fact, the position A and C are the same distance, and B is farther away than positions A and C.

- The car width extension mark represents the distance to the road surface. The distance to an object on the road is not accurately represented by the guides.
- In the following conditions, screen visibility may be impaired. This is not a malfunction.
  - When it is dark (during the night, etc.).
  - Under very high or very low temperature conditions.
  - When water drops adhere to the camera, or when the humidity is high (such as rainy weather, etc.).
  - When foreign bodies (such as mud, etc.) adhere to the camera or its peripheral area.
  - When sunlight or headlights directly strike the camera lens.
  - When a CCD camera is connected, smearing\* may occur. This phenomenon is peculiar to CCD cameras.

## \* Smear phenomenon:

A phenomenon which occurs when a high-intensity spot (such as a reflection of the sunlight on a car body) is shot by the camera. The picture below is an example of 'vertical smear' common to CCD cameras.

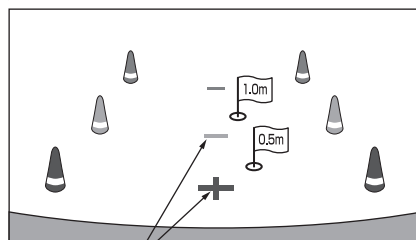


## Error between the screen and the actual road surface

In the following conditions, errors are produced between the screen guidance and the actual road surface. (The illustrations represent a case when the camera is installed in the standard position.)

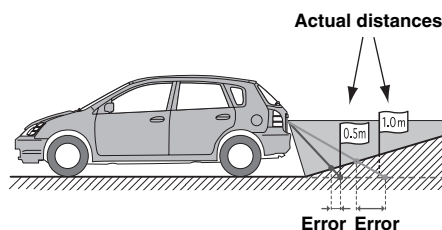
## ■ When there is a steep upward slope behind the car (example)

<Screen>



Distance guidance marks

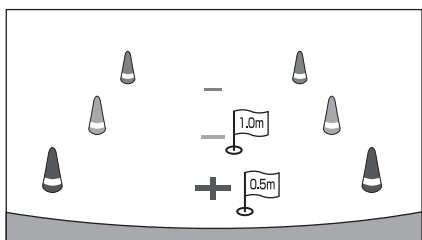
<Situation of the car>



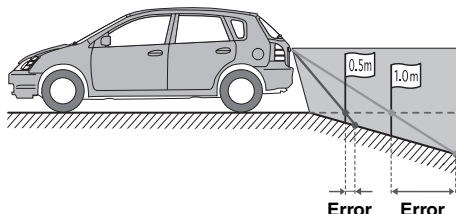
The distance guidance mark represents the distance to a flat road surface. Therefore in the case of an upward slope behind the car, the distance guides are displayed closer to the rear bumper than the actual distance. For example, if there is an obstacle on the upward slope, it may appear farther away than its actual position. Also, an error may occur between the guidance and the actual path of the car on the road surface.

## ■ When there is a steep downward slope behind the car (example)

<Screen>



<Situation of the car>



In the case of a downward slope behind the car, the distance guides are displayed farther from the rear bumper than the actual distance. If there is an obstacle on the downward slope, it seems closer than its actual position. Also, an error may occur between the guidance and the actual path of the car on the road surface.

## Front Camera Operation

Set "Front" for "Direct Camera Setting" (page 58).

### Displaying the Front View Video Manually

- 1 Press the ★ (**My Favourites**) button.  
The Favourites screen is displayed.

- 2 Touch [ ].

The Camera mode is activated and the front view video is displayed.

When the front camera (direct camera) and rear camera or side camera (AUX camera) are connected simultaneously, the screen for selecting which camera image to display appears.

■ USER1/USER2

### Switching the Image Pattern for the Front Camera

- 1 Touch the screen when the image from the front camera is displayed.

The operation screen is displayed on the screen.

- After a 5-second time-out, the operation screen returns to the camera display screen.

- 2 Touch [**Panorama**], [**Corner**] or [**Top**].

The image pattern changes.

[Panorama]: Panorama View

[Corner]: Corner View

[Top]: Ground View

- For detailed information about image patterns, see the camera Owner's Manual.

■ USER1/USER2

### About the adjustment of guide display ON/OFF setting and adjustment of Caution display location

As with the rear camera, the front camera guide display ON/OFF setting and Caution display location can be adjusted. Refer to "Guide Display ON/OFF Setting" (page 71) and "Adjusting the Caution Display Location" (page 71) for the operations.

## Other Camera Operation

Set "OTHER" for "AUX Camera Setting" (page 59).

**1 Press the ★ (My Favourites) button.**  
The Favourites screen is displayed.

**2 Touch [ ] or [ ].**  
When the front camera (direct camera) and rear camera or side camera (AUX camera) are connected simultaneously, the screen for selecting which camera image to display appears.

USER1/USER2

### About the adjustment of the Caution display location

As with the rear camera, the Caution display location for other cameras can be adjusted. Refer to "Adjusting the Caution Display Location" (page 71) for the operations.

## USB Memory (Optional)

You can play back music files (MP3/WMA/AAC) and video files (DivX®) stored in a USB memory device on the internal player of this system.

This section explains music operations only. Refer to the DivX® operation section in "DVD" (page 34) for information on video.

- If the first file played is a music file, the mode will be the music play mode. If the first file played is a video file, the mode will be the video play mode. Also, the mode changes by selecting "AUDIO" or "VIDEO" in step 2 in Search Function. Refer to "Searching for a Desired Song" (page 76) and "Searching for a Desired Video File" (page 39).

### ■ Display example for the USB main screen (Info mode)

#### Audio mode



#### Video mode



Touch [<<], [>>]



- Refer to "Display example for MP3/WMA/AAC main screen" (page 31) and "Display example for DivX® main screen" (page 34) for screen element explanations.
- You can display artwork during USB playback.

### ■ About creating a tag information library

You can scan music files in a USB Memory device and create a library of tag information in this unit. Library creation starts when the USB Memory device is connected. The time it takes to create the library depends on the number of files in the USB Memory device, but it may take several minutes.

### About operations during library creation

- “Tag Search” (page 76) does not work properly while a library is being created.
- The order in which songs are played during library creation may differ from the order in the USB Memory device.

## Playback

**1 Press the  button.**

**2 Touch [USB] of Top banner.**

The USB mode is activated and the display changes to the USB screen.

**3 Touch [K<] or [>X] or to select the desired track (file).**

**Returning to the beginning of the current (or previous) track (file):**

Touch [K<].

**Fast reverse :**

Touch and hold [K<].

**Advancing to the beginning of the next track (file) :**

Touch [>X].

**Fast forward :**

Touch and hold [>X].

**4 To pause playback, touch [▶/||].**

[▶] is displayed in the middle of the screen.

Touch [▶/||] again or touch [▶] in the middle of the screen to start playback.

- Any file protected by DRM (Digital Rights Management) copy protection, cannot be played back on this unit.
- The playback time may not be correctly displayed when a VBR (Variable Bit Rate) recorded file is played back.
- If there is tag information, artist name/album name/track name is displayed.
- ID3 tag/WMA tag  
If an MP3/WMA/AAC file contains ID3 tag/WMA tag information, the ID3 tag/WMA tag information is displayed (e.g., song name, artist name, and album name).
- If the combined number of files/folders in the USB Memory devices reaches 1,000, the message “The system has reached its limit of recognizable files/folders from the USB device.” will be displayed. To delete the message, remove the USB Memory devices.

## Repeat Play

Operation differs depending on whether the most recent song search was a Tag Search or a Folder/File Search.

**Touch [] during playback.**

The repeat mode switches every time the button is touched.

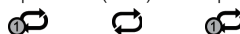
**Folder/File Search mode:**

Repeat → Repeat Folder\* → (OFF) → Repeat



**Tag Search mode:**

Repeat → (OFF) → Repeat



\* Only files in a folder are repeatedly played back.

- If the Repeat Play mode is activated during M.I.X. playback, the M.I.X. mode will be cancelled.

## Random Play (M.I.X.)

Operation differs depending on whether the most recent song search was a Tag Search or a Folder Search.

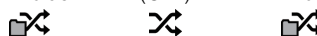
**Touch [X<] during playback.**

The tracks (files) on the disc will be played back in a random sequence.

To cancel M.I.X. play, touch [X<].

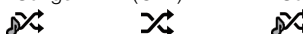
**Folder Search mode:**

M.I.X. Folder\*<sup>1</sup> → (OFF) → M.I.X. Folder\*<sup>1</sup>



**Tag Search mode:**

M.I.X. Songs\*<sup>2</sup> → (OFF) → M.I.X. Songs\*<sup>2</sup>



\*<sup>1</sup> Only files in a folder are played back in random sequence.

\*<sup>2</sup> M.I.X. Songs randomly plays back songs within a selected category (playlist, album, etc.). The songs within the category are played just once until all songs have been played.

- If the M.I.X. mode is activated during Repeat playback, the Repeat Play mode will be cancelled.
- If you select a track by using the search mode, the M.I.X. play mode will be cancelled.



## Random Play (M.I.X. ALL)

### 1 Touch [ (Search)] of Bottom banner during playback.


The search mode is activated.

### 2 Touch [Music].

The folder name list screen is displayed.

### 3 Touch [Shuffle All] during playback.

The tracks (files) on the disc will be played back in a random sequence.

To cancel M.I.X. play, touch [].

- All songs in the USB Memory are played back in random sequence. Any one song does not play back again until all songs have been played back.

## Searching for a Desired Song

X008AU/X008EU/INE-W957A/INE-W957E can carry out 2 kinds of searches.

### File/Folder Name Search

### 1 Touch [ (Search)] of Bottom banner during playback.

### 2 Touch [Music].

The search mode is activated.

### 3 Touch [Folder].

The folder name list screen is displayed.

### Folder Name Search Mode

### 4 Touch [] of the desired folder.

The first file in the selected folder is played back.




### File Name Search Mode

### 4 Touch the desired folder name.

The file name of the selected folder is displayed.

### 5 Touch the desired file name.

The selected file is played back.

- To return to the previous hierarchy, touch [].
- For details on how to scroll through the list, refer to “Selecting an Item in a List” (page 29).
- After selecting a folder via a Folder name search, touch [] on the main screen to display the folder search screen.
- After selecting a file via a File name search, touch [] on the main screen to display the file search screen.

## Tag Search

By using file tag information and keeping these songs organised in playlists, this unit's search functions will ease song searches in large libraries.

Each music category has its own individual hierarchy. Use the Playlists/Artists/Albums/Songs/Genres/Composers search mode to narrow searches based on the table below.

Hierarchy 1	Hierarchy 2	Hierarchy 3	Hierarchy 4
Playlists	Songs	—	—
Artists	Albums	Songs	—
Albums	Songs	—	—
Songs	—	—	—
Genres	Artists	Albums	Songs
Composers	Albums	Songs	—

For example: Searching by Artist name

The following example explains how an ARTISTS search is performed.

Another search mode can be used for the same operation, although the hierarchy differs.

### ■ Searching by artist name

### 1 Touch [ (Search)] of Bottom banner during playback.

### 2 Touch [Music].


The search mode screen appears.

### 3 Touch [Artists].


The Artists search screen is displayed.

### 4 Select the desired artist.

### To play back the Artist directly

- 1 Touch [] of the artist's name.  
All songs of the selected artist are played back.

### To search for the Album of the Artist

- 1 Touch the selected artist name.  
The Albums search screen of the selected artist is displayed.
- 2 Touch [] of the desired album's name.  
All songs of the selected album are played back.

### To search for a Song in the Album of the Artist


- 1 Touch the desired artist's name.  
All albums of the selected artist are displayed.

### 5 Touch the desired album's name.

All songs of the selected album are displayed.

### 6 Touch the desired song's name.

The selected song is played back.

- For details on how to scroll through the list, refer to “Selecting an Item in a List” (page 29).
- After selecting a file via a Tag search, touch [] on the main screen to display the search screen. The hierarchy level you selected last in the search mode is displayed.

## Direct Up/Down Function

This operation is available only if the most recent song search was a Tag Search.

Playlist/Artist/Album/Genre/Composer can be easily changed.

For example, if you listen to a song from a selected album, the album can be changed.

**Touch [◀] or [▶] to select the desired Playlist/Artist/Album/Genre/Composer.**

- If an album is selected from an artist search, the album can be searched.
- For details on icon display, refer to "Direct Up/Down switch icon:" (page 80).
- If search selection mode is not activated, Direct Up/Down Function is not possible.
- During M.I.X. playback, this operation is not possible.

## Select the desired Folder (Folder up/down)

This operation is available only if the most recent song search was a Folder/File Search.

If you listen to a file from a selected folder, the folder can be changed.

**Touch [◀■] or [■▶] to select the folder.**

- During M.I.X. ALL playback, this operation is not possible.

## iPod/iPhone (Optional)

An iPod/iPhone can be connected to this unit by using the cable KCU-461iV (sold separately). You can connect a video-capable iPod to enjoy video as well as music.

When the X008AU/X008EU/INE-W957A/INE-W957E is connected by the above cable, the controls on the iPod are disabled.

- This unit does not support video playback from iPhone 5, etc., which with Lightning Connector.
- Internet or telephone functions, etc., of the iPhone or iPod touch are not controllable from the unit, but these functions can be controlled using the iPhone or iPod touch itself.
- To watch the video screen of the file in the iPod/iPhone, the parking brake must be engaged.
- For automatic transmission vehicles, place the transmission lever in the Park position.

### About iPod/iPhone models usable with this unit

- The following devices have been tested and shown to work with this unit. Correct function of earlier versions cannot be guaranteed.
  - iPod nano 7th generation 16GB: Ver.1.0.2
  - iPod touch 5th generation 32GB/64GB: Ver.7.0.4
  - iPod nano 6th generation 8GB/16GB: Ver.1.2
  - iPod touch 4th generation 8GB/32GB/64GB: Ver.6.1.5
  - iPod touch 3rd generation 32GB/64GB: Ver.5.1.5
  - iPod nano 5th generation(video camera) 8GB/16GB: Ver.1.0.2
  - iPod classic(Late2009) 160GB: Ver.2.0.4
  - iPod touch 2nd generation 8GB/16GB/32GB: Ver.4.2.1
  - iPod nano 4th generation(video) 8GB/16GB: Ver.1.0.4
  - iPod classic 120GB: Ver.2.0.1
  - iPod touch 1st generation 8GB/16GB/32GB: Ver.3.1.3
  - iPod nano 3rd generation(video) 4GB/8GB: Ver.1.1.3
  - iPod classic 80GB/160GB: Ver.1.1.2
- The following devices have been tested and shown to work with this unit. Correct function of earlier versions cannot be guaranteed.
  - iPhone 5S 16GB/32GB/64GB: Ver.7.0.4
  - iPhone 5C 16GB/32GB/64GB: Ver.7.0.4
  - iPhone 5 16GB/32GB/64GB: Ver.7.0.4
  - iPhone 4S 16GB/32GB/64GB: Ver.7.0.4
  - iPhone 4 16GB/32GB: Ver.7.0.4
  - iPhone 3GS 8GB/16GB/32GB: Ver.6.1.3
  - iPhone 3G 8GB/16GB: Ver.4.2.1
- For clarity in identifying your model of iPod, please see Apple's own document "Identifying iPod models" at <http://support.apple.com/kb/HT1353>.

## ⚠ WARNING

It is dangerous for the driver to watch video while driving the vehicle. The driver may be distracted from looking ahead and an accident could occur.

Install the X008AU/X008EU/INE-W957A/INE-W957E correctly so that the driver cannot watch Video unless the vehicle is stopped and the emergency brake is applied.

If the X008AU/X008EU/INE-W957A/INE-W957E is not installed correctly, the driver will be able to watch the Video while driving the vehicle and may be distracted from looking ahead causing an accident. The driver or other people could be severely injured.

## ■ Display example for iPod/iPhone main screen (Info mode)

### Audio mode



### Video mode



- ① Song title/Episode title\*
- ② Artist title/Release Date\*
- ③ Album title/Podcast title\*
- ④ Current song no./Total song no.
- ⑤ Remaining time for playing
- ⑥ Artwork display
- ⑦ Elapsed time
- ⑧ : During audio-only playback of a video file in a Playlist, the Video icon is displayed.
- ⑨ : During audio-only playback of a music file in a video Playlist, the Music icon is displayed.
- ⑩ Total time for playing

\* Podcast mode

## The iPod/iPhone operation screen display during video file playback

Touch the screen while the iPod/iPhone playback screen is displayed.

The iPod/iPhone operation screen is displayed.

- The operation screen changes to the visual screen in the iPod mode for 5 seconds after an operation has been performed.

## Playback

- 1 Press the button.
- 2 Touch **[iPod (Audio or Video)]** of Top banner.  
The display shows the iPod mode screen.
- 3 Touch **[<<]** or **[>>]** or to select the desired track (file).

**Returning to the beginning of the current (or previous) track (file):**

Touch **[<<]**.

**Fast reverse the current track :**

Touch and hold **[<<]**.

**Advancing to the beginning of the next track (file) :**

Touch **[>>]**.

**Fast forward the current track :**

Touch and hold **[>>]**.

- 4 To pause playback, touch **[▶ / ||]**.

- If a song is playing on the iPod/iPhone when it is connected to the X008AU/X008EU/INE-W957A/INE-W957E, it will continue playing after the connection.
- An episode may have several chapters. The chapter can be changed by touching **[<<]** or **[>>]**.
- If the artist, album or song name, created in iTunes, has too many characters, songs may not be played back when connected to the X008AU/X008EU/INE-W957A/INE-W957E. Therefore, a maximum of 64 characters is recommended. The maximum number of characters for the unit is 64.
- Some characters may not be correctly displayed.

## Searching for a Music File

An iPod/iPhone can contain thousands of songs. For this reason, this unit can make various searches using the search function as shown below.

Using the Playlist/Artist/Album/Podcast/Audiobook/Genre/Composer/Song search mode's individual hierarchy, you can narrow down your search as shown in the table below.

### <MUSIC Search Menu>

Hierarchy 1	Hierarchy 2	Hierarchy 3	Hierarchy 4
Playlists	Songs	—	—
Artists	Albums	Songs	—
Albums	Songs	—	—
Songs	—	—	—
Podcasts	Episodes	—	—
Genres	Artists	Albums	Songs
Composers	Albums	Songs	—
Audiobooks	—	—	—

### For example: Searching by Artist name

The following example explains how an ARTISTS search is performed. Another search mode can be used for the same operation, although the hierarchy differs.

### ■ Searching by artist name

- 1 Touch [**Q (Search)**] of Bottom banner during playback.
- 2 Touch [**Music**].  
The search mode screen appears.
- 3 Touch [**Artists**].  
The Artists search screen is displayed.
- 4 Select the desired artist.

### To play back the Artist directly

- 1 Touch [**▶**] of the artist's name.  
All songs of the selected artist are played back.

### To search for the Album of the Artist

- 1 Touch the selected artist name.  
The Albums search screen of the selected artist is displayed.
- 2 Touch [**▶**] of the desired album's name.  
All songs of the selected album are played back.

### To search for a Song in the Album of the Artist

- 1 Touch the desired artist's name.  
All albums of the selected artist are displayed.

- 5 Touch the desired album's name.  
All songs of the selected album are displayed.
- 6 Touch the desired song's name.  
The selected song is played back.

- Touching [**▶▶**] of "ALL" will play back all songs in the list.
- Touching "ALL" will display the search list in the next hierarchy.
- An alphabet skip function is available. Refer to "Alphabet Skip Function" (page 79).
- For details on how to scroll through the list, refer to "Selecting an Item in a List" (page 29).

## Searching for a Desired Video File

You can select a movie, music video, etc., from the list screen.

- Video search mode depends on the iPod/iPhone. If the specification of the iPod/iPhone is changed, the search mode on this unit will also be changed.

### Examples for the video search mode

- Video Playlists
- Movies
- Music Videos, etc.

### For example: Searching by Movie

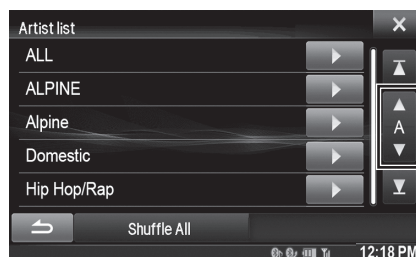
The following example explains how a Movie search is performed. Another search mode can be used for the same operation, although the hierarchy differs.

- 1 Touch [**Q (Search)**] of Bottom banner during playback.
- 2 Touch [**Video**].  
The Video search mode screen appears.
- 3 Touch [**Movies**].  
The Movies search screen is displayed.
- 4 Touch the desired movie.  
The selected movie is played back.

- For details on how to scroll through the list, refer to "Selecting an Item in a List" (page 29).

## Alphabet Skip Function

The unit is provided with an alphabet skip function for effective searching. When you use this function in the search mode, you can quickly search an artist or a song, etc.



### Alphabet skip function:

The alphabet skip function is skipped to the next alphabet such as from A to B, B to C by touching [(ALPHABET) ▼]. You can also skip in reverse order such as from B to A by touching [▲ (ALPHABET)].

## Direct Up/Down Function

If you touch [▶] of the album name in the search mode, this album will be played back repeatedly. To go to the previous or next Album, use the Direct Up/Down Function.

**Touch [◀] or [▶] to select the desired Playlist/Artist/Album/Genre/Podcast/Composer.**



Direct Up/Down switch icon

**Direct Up/Down switch icon:**

	Playlist
	Artist
	Album
	Podcast
	Genre
	Composer

- You can use the Direct Up/Down Function during video file playback. The Direct Up/Down Function switches in the video mode are [◀] [▶].
- If you are searching for a song, this operation cannot be performed.
- If an album is selected from an artist search, the album can be searched.
- During shuffle playback, this operation is not possible.

## Search Position Memory

During iPod/iPhone playback, you can quickly move back up the selected hierarchy, a level at time.

**Touch [≡]. (ex. [< Playlists])**

The hierarchy level you selected last in the search mode is displayed.

## Repeat Play

**Touch [↺] to repeatedly play back the currently track.**

The tracks (files) will be played repeatedly.

Touch [↺] again to deactivate Repeat play.

Repeat → (OFF) → Repeat



## Random Play (Shuffle)

**Touch [⌵] during playback.**

The files will be played back in a random sequence.

The Shuffle mode switches every time [⌵] is touched.

Shuffle Songs → Shuffle Albums → (OFF) → Shuffle Songs



**Shuffle Albums:** The songs on each album are played back in proper order. Upon completing of all the songs on the album, the next album is selected randomly. This continues until all albums have been played.

**Shuffle Songs:** Song shuffle randomly plays back songs within a selected category (playlist, album, etc.). The songs within the category are played just once until all songs have been played.

- For details on the search mode, refer to “Searching for a Music File” (page 79).

## Random Play (Shuffle All)

All files in the iPod are played back in random sequence.

**1 Touch [🔍 (Search)] of Bottom banner during playback.**

**2 Touch [Music].**

The search mode screen appears.

**3 Touch [Shuffle All] of Bottom banner during playback.**

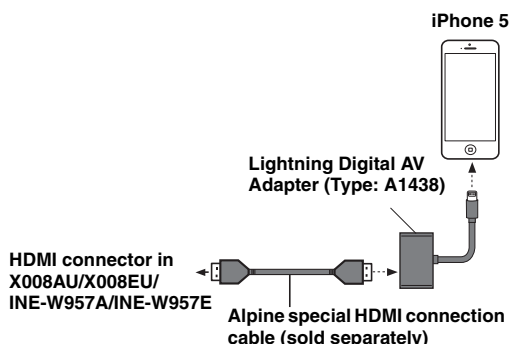
The indicator “⌵” lights, and the songs will be played back in random sequence.

- To cancel, set the Shuffle mode to Off. Refer to “Random Play (Shuffle)” (page 80).

# HDMI Device (Optional)

The device can connect with electronic device supporting HDMI output by HDMI interface and fulfill the play of audio and video with HD signal. But, the unit only displays the electronic device interface by mirror image, you cannot operate the electronic device by this unit.

- The electronic device must possess HDMI output interface.
- Only purchase Alpine Special HDMI connection cable.
- If connecting an iPhone 5, etc., which with Lightning Connector you need to prepare the optional Digital AV Adapter.
- Hereby take the connection method of iPhone 5 for example.



- Not all devices with HDMI output interface can be recognised by this unit.

**1 Press the  button.**

**2 Touch [HDMI] of top banner.**

- When disconnecting with HDMI device, the source icon of HDMI is grey.

**3 In HDMI player mode, the screen of the device displays the content of electronic equipment by mirror image.**

# MirrorLink™ Operation (Optional)

## DISCLAIMER

ENABLED BY CONNECTIVITY FUNCTIONS OF THE SMARTPHONE, THE SMARTPHONES USER INTERFACES FOR MUSIC OR DRIVE ARE DISPLAYED DIRECTLY ON OUR HEAD UNIT WITH NO ALTERATION. ALPINE SHALL NOT BE RESPONSIBLE OR LIABLE TO USERS FOR ANY DAMAGES, LOSSES OR COSTS RELATED TO OR ARISING OUT OF THESE SMARTPHONE INTERFACES.

## Using MirrorLink™

MirrorLink is a standard for connecting provides for a connection between an X008AU/X008EU/INE-W957A/INE-W957E and a smartphone. Using MirrorLink, you can display a display smartphone screen and allows you to operate your smartphone applications via this unit.

- Some applications may not be displayed or operated, depending on the connected smartphone.
- If the smartphone is locked, it cannot be operated from the unit.
- For details on compatible phones, refer to the Alpine website.

**When a smartphone with applications for MirrorLink is connected via USB, the Mirror Mode and/or Car Mode source icon will display on the Top banner. The icon will become invalid if the smartphone is disconnected from this unit.**

**1 Press the  button.**

The Audio/Visual screen is displayed.

**2 Touch [Mirror Mode] or [Car Mode] on the Top banner.**

The screen for the selected mode is displayed.

**3 Press ★ (My Favourites) button during the full screen mode.**

The Media Control buttons will display.

Press ★ (My Favourites) button again, the Media Control buttons will disappear.

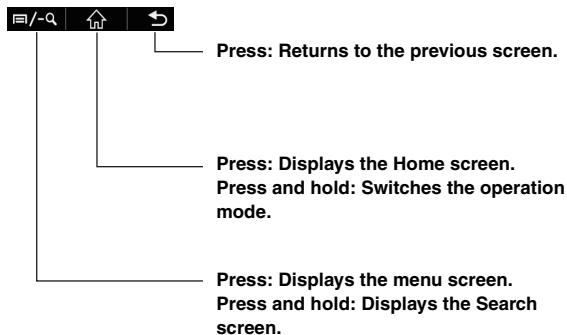
**4 Touch the Media Control buttons to operate the unit.**

- The Media Control buttons differ, depending on the mode.
- Operable modes on this unit may differ from operations on your smartphone, depending on the connected smartphone.

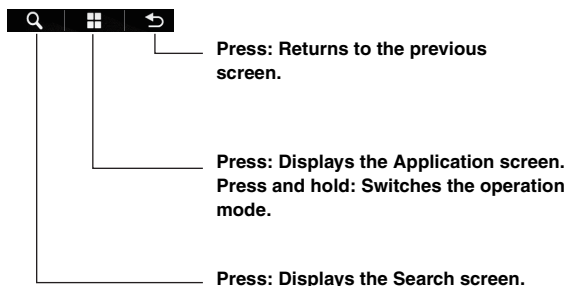
## Switching the Media Control button Operation

Touch  to switch the patterns.

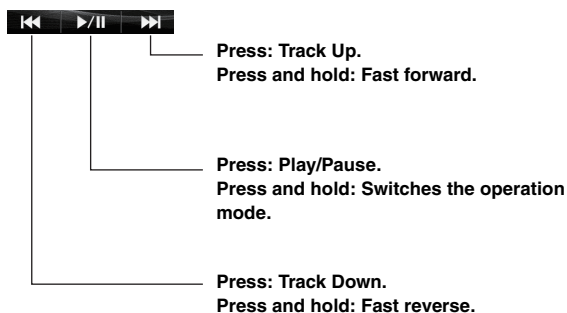
### ■ Pattern -1



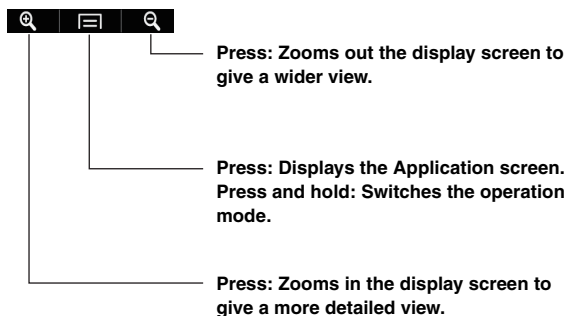
### ■ Pattern -2







### ■ Pattern -3



### ■ Pattern -4



- Operable modes on this unit may differ from operations on your smartphone, depending on the connected smartphone.
- [, [, and [] are common buttons and cannot be set to OFF in the Media Control button Setup.
- Touch [] to display the Top/Bottom banner.
- A pattern that has been set to "Off" in the Media Control button Setup, is not displayed.

## Setting the Media Control button

There are four patterns of Media Control button, you can choose whether to close them.

- 1 Touch **[Setup]** to display the Media Control button Setup screen.
- 2 Set the patterns to ON or OFF.



# Pandora® internet radio (optional) (X008AU/INE-W957A)

Pandora® internet radio is your own FREE personalized radio now available to stream music on your iPhone and smartphone (which runs Android OS or BlackBerry OS).

Just start with the name of one of your favourite artists, songs or classical composers and Pandora® will create a “station” that plays their music and more music like it.

The X008AU/INE-W957A enables you to interact with your Pandora® account by connecting an iPhone and smartphone that has the latest version of the Pandora® application installed.

## ■ Display example for iPhone Pandora Radio screen



## ■ Display example for BLUETOOTH Pandora Radio screen



- ① Station name
- ② Song Name
- ③ Artist Name
- ④ Album Name
- ⑤ Track/Artist bookmark icon
- ⑥ Elapsed time
- ⑦ Remaining time for playing
- ⑧ Artwork display

## Listening to Pandora®

### iPhone Pandora®

Connect the iPhone to this unit's USB terminal before using iPhone Pandora®.

#### 1 Press the button.

#### 2 Touch [PANDORA®] of Top banner.

Follow the confirmation message appears on the iPhone to launch the Pandora Application.

The display changes to PANDORA mode screen.

#### 3 To skip to the next song, touch [▶▶▶].

- The operation to replay a previous song is not available.
- Pandora limits the number of skips allowed on their service. If you attempt to skip songs beyond the limit, “No skips remaining” is displayed.
- X008AU/INE-W957A remembers the source just before turning off the power.  
Even if you reconnect an iPhone without launching Pandora Application while the power is off, Pandora mode (not iPod mode) is displayed when power is turned back on.
- Depending on the signal status, song may be stopped during playback.  
When the advertisement is received, the playback time will be frozen and key operation is invalid.
- The playback time may not be correctly displayed.

### BLUETOOTH Pandora®

When using BLUETOOTH Pandora®, it is necessary to register the connected BLUETOOTH compatible smartphone (which runs Android OS or BlackBerry OS) as BLUETOOTH Audio. For details, refer to “Registering the BLUETOOTH Device” (page 56).

Also, make sure the BLUETOOTH Pandora® setting is set to “On” (page 55).

#### 1 Pair the smartphone with this unit.

#### 2 Press the button.

#### 3 Touch [PANDORA® (BLUETOOTH)] of Top banner.

Follow the confirmation message appears on the Smartphone to launch the Pandora Application.

The display changes to BLUETOOTH Pandora mode screen. The playback screen appears.

#### 4 To skip to the next song, touch [▶▶▶].

- If pairing is not registered for the Bluetooth audio device, the message “No BLUETOOTH device connected. Please check “BLUETOOTH settings.” appears on the screen. Change the audio device settings as per “Registering the BLUETOOTH Device” (page 56).
- The operation to replay a previous song is not available.
- Pandora® limits the number of skips allowed on their service. If you attempt to skip songs beyond the limit, “No skips remaining.” is displayed.
- X008AU/INE-W957A remembers the source just before turning off the power. If Pandora® is the last SOURCE to be played, it will appear as the SOURCE the next time the unit is power up even if the app is not launched on your smartphone.
- The display content varies when ads are received.
- The playback time may not be correctly displayed.



---

## “Thumbs” Feedback

---

You can personalize your stations with “Thumbs Up” or “Thumbs Down” feedback, which the system takes into account for future music selections.

**During playback, touch [👍] for thumbs up, or touch [👎] for thumbs down.**

👍: The “👍” indicator appears in the display. Pandora® will add similar music to your station.

👎: The “👎” indicator is displayed. Pandora® will ban that song from your station, and the current song is skipped. If the number of skips allowed has reached its limit, the current song continues to play back.

- *In some situations, “Thumbs” feedback may not be available. “Unable to save your thumb rating.” will be displayed.*

---

## Searching for a Desired Station

---

You can display your station list and select stations directly from the X008AU/INE-W957A.

### Alphabet Search

**1 Touch [🔍 (Search)] of Bottom banner to activate the Search mode.**

**2 Touch [By A-Z].**

The “By A-Z” search mode is activated and the station names are listed alphabetically.

**3 Touch the desired station.**

Pandora will play that station.

### Search by Date Added

**1 Touch [🔍 (Search)] of Bottom banner to activate the Search mode.**

**2 Touch [By Date].**

The “By Date” search mode is activated and the station names are listed by the date they were added to the account.

**3 Touch the desired station.**

Pandora will play that station.

- *Currently playing station will be highlighted in Alphabet search list.*
- *The shared station is marked with “👤” in search list.*

---

## Creating a New Station

---

Basing on the currently playing song or artist, a personalized Pandora station can be created. The new station will play more music like it.

### Freeword

**1 During playback, touch [Create New Station].**

The Key Pad screen is displayed. You can enter a keyword and search for Artist/Song.

**2 Enter a keyword and touch the [OK] button.**

### Artist/Track

**During playback, touch [Create Station From (Artist/Track)] of Bottom banner.**

- *The created station is saved to your station list.*
- *You can also create stations using the Pandora Application on your iPhone or on the web at [www.pandora.com](http://www.pandora.com).*
- *In some situations, creating a new station may not be available. “Unable to create station.” will be displayed.*
- *[Create New Station] is not available while driving.*

---

## QuickMix

---

Use QuickMix to create a playlist based on two or more of your Pandora stations. Edit your QuickMix station selections on the Pandora Compatible Application for iPhone when it is not connected to the X008AU/INE-W957A.

**1 Touch [🔍 (Search)] of Bottom banner to activate the Search mode.**

**2 Touch [By A-Z] or [By Date].**

The “By A-Z” or “By Date” search mode is activated and the station name is displayed.

**3 Touch [QuickMix].**

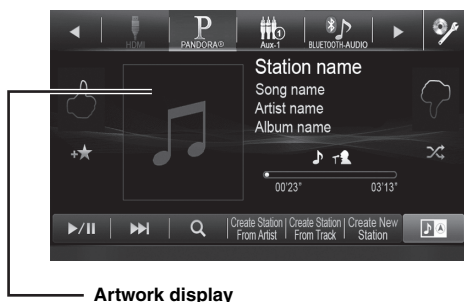
- *The ⚡ indicator lights, and the songs from the created stations are played back in random sequence.*
- *Select another station during search mode to cancel QuickMix.*
- *During search list mode, the ⚡ icon will be displayed when the current station belongs to QuickMix.*

## Bookmarking a Desired Track or Artist

The currently playing song or artist can be bookmarked and saved to your Pandora account.

### 1 During playback, touch [Artwork display].

The type selection telop is displayed.



### 2 Touch [Track] or [Artist].

The current track or artist is bookmarked. "🎵" icon or "👤" icon is displayed.

- Your bookmarks can be viewed on your "Profile" page at [www.pandora.com](http://www.pandora.com).
- In some situations, bookmarks may not be available. "Unable to save your bookmark." will be displayed.

## Information

### Product Software Update

This product use software that can be updated through a USB Memory device. Download the software from the Alpine website and update the product using the USB Memory device.

#### Updating this product

Check the Alpine website for details on updating.

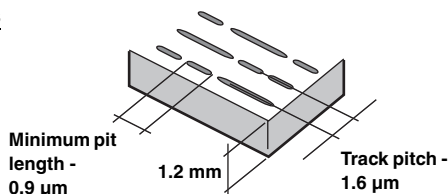
<http://www.alpine-asia.com>

<http://www.alpine.com.au>

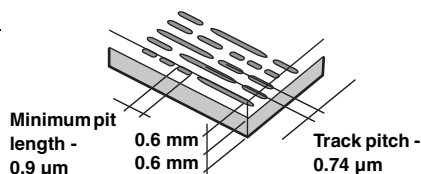
### About DVDs

Music CDs and DVDs have grooves (tracks) in which the digital data is recorded. The data is represented as microscopic pits recorded into the track – these pits are read by a laser beam to play the disc. On DVDs, the density of the tracks and pits is twice that of CDs, so DVDs can contain more data in less space.

#### CDs



#### DVDs



A 12 cm disc can contain one movie or about four hours of music. In addition, DVDs provide sharp picture quality with vivid colours thanks to a horizontal resolution of over 500 lines (compared to less than 300 for VHS tape).

#### In addition, DVDs offer a variety of functions.

##### Multiple audio\* (page 39)

Movies can be recorded in up to eight languages. The desired language can be selected from the unit.

##### Subtitles function\* (page 39)

Movies can include subtitles in up to 32 languages. The desired subtitle language can be selected from the unit.

##### Multi angle function\* (page 39)

When the DVD contains a movie shot from multiple angles, the desired angle can be selected from the unit.

**Multi story function\***

With this function, a single movie includes various story lines. You can select different story lines to view various versions of the same movie.

Operation differs from disc to disc. Story line selection screens including instructions appear during the movie. Just follow the instructions.

*\* These functions differ from disc to disc. For details, refer to the disc's instructions.*

## List of Language Codes

(For details, see page 52.)

Abbreviation	Code	Language	Abbreviation	Code	Language	Abbreviation	Code	Language
AA	6565	Afar	IE	7369	Interlingue	RN	8278	Kirundi
AB	6566	Abkhazian	IK	7375	Inupiak	RO	8279	Romanian
AF	6570	Afrikaans	IN	7378	Indonesian	RU	8285	Russian
AM	6577	Amharic	IS	7383	Icelandic	RW	8287	Kinyarwanda
AR	6582	Arabic	IT	7384	Italian	SA	8365	Sanskrit
AS	6583	Assamese	IW	7387	Hebrew	SD	8368	Sindhi
AY	6589	Aymara	JP	7465	Japanese	SG	8371	Sangho
AZ	6590	Azerbaijani	JI	7473	Yiddish	SH	8372	Serbo-Croatian
BA	6665	Bashkir	JW	7487	Javanese	SI	8373	Singhalese
BE	6669	Byelorussian	KA	7565	Georgian	SK	8375	Slovak
BG	6671	Bulgarian	KK	7575	Kazakh	SL	8376	Slovenian
BH	6672	Bihari	KL	7576	Greenlandic	SM	8377	Samoan
BI	6673	Bislama	KM	7577	Cambodian	SN	8378	Shona
BN	6678	Bengali, Bangla	KN	7578	Kannada	SO	8379	Somali
BO	6679	Tibetan	KO	7579	Korean	SQ	8381	Albanian
BR	6682	Breton	KS	7583	Kashmiri	SR	8382	Serbian
CA	6765	Catalan	KU	7585	Kurdish	SS	8383	Siswati
CO	6779	Corsican	KY	7589	Kirghiz	ST	8384	Sesotho
CS	6783	Czech	LA	7665	Latin	SU	8385	Sundanese
CY	6789	Welsh	LN	7678	Lingala	SV	8386	Swedish
DA	6865	Danish	LO	7679	Laothian	SW	8387	Swahili
DE	6869	German	LT	7684	Lithuanian	TA	8465	Tamil
DZ	6890	Bhutani	LV	7686	Latvian, Lettish	TE	8469	Telugu
EL	6976	Greek	MG	7771	Malagasy	TG	8471	Tajik
EN	6978	English	MI	7773	Maori	TH	8472	Thai
EO	6979	Esperanto	MK	7775	Macedonian	TI	8473	Tigrinya
ES	6983	Spanish	ML	7776	Malayalam	TK	8475	Turkmen
ET	6984	Estonian	MN	7778	Mongolian	TL	8476	Tagalog
EU	6985	Basque	MO	7779	Moldavian	TN	8478	Setswana
FA	7065	Persian	MR	7782	Marathi	TO	8479	Tonga
FI	7073	Finnish	MS	7783	Malay	TR	8482	Turkish
FJ	7074	Fiji	MT	7784	Maltese	TS	8483	Tsonga
FO	7079	Faroese	MY	7789	Burmese	TT	8484	Tatar
FR	7082	French	NA	7865	Nauru	TW	8487	Twi
FY	7089	Frisian	NE	7869	Nepali	UK	8575	Ukrainian
GA	7165	Irish	NL	7876	Dutch	UR	8582	Urdu
GD	7168	Scots Gaelic	NO	7879	Norwegian	UZ	8590	Uzbek
GL	7176	Galician	OC	7967	Occitan	VI	8673	Vietnamese
GN	7178	Guarani	OM	7977	(Afan) Oromo	VO	8679	Volapuk
GU	7185	Gujarati	OR	7982	Oriya	WO	8779	Wolof
HA	7265	Hausa	PA	8065	Punjabi	XH	8872	Xhosa
HI	7273	Hindi	PL	8076	Polish	YO	8979	Yoruba
HR	7282	Croatian	PS	8083	Pashto, Pushto	ZH	9072	Chinese
HU	7285	Hungarian	PT	8084	Portuguese	ZU	9085	Zulu
HY	7289	Armenian	QU	8185	Quechua			
IA	7365	Interlingua	RM	8277	Rhaeto-Romance			

# List of Country Codes

(For details, see page 52.)

Abbreviation	Code	Country	Abbreviation	Code	Country	Abbreviation	Code	Country
AD	6568	Andorra	DM	6877	Dominica	KI	7573	Kiribati
AE	6569	United Arab Emirates	DO	6879	Dominican Republic	KM	7577	Comoros
AF	6570	Afghanistan	DZ	6890	Algeria	KN	7578	Saint Kitts and Nevis
AG	6571	Antigua and Barbuda	EC	6967	Ecuador	KP	7580	Korea, Democratic People's Republic of
AI	6573	Anguilla	EE	6969	Estonia			
AL	6576	Albania	EG	6971	Egypt	KR	7582	Korea, Republic of
AM	6577	Armenia	EH	6972	Western Sahara	KW	7587	Kuwait
AN	6578	Netherlands Antilles	ER	6982	Eritrea	KY	7589	Cayman Islands
AO	6579	Angola	ES	6983	Spain	KZ	7590	Kazakhstan
AQ	6581	Antarctica	ET	6984	Ethiopia	LA	7665	Lao People's Democratic Republic
AR	6582	Argentina	FI	7073	Finland			
AS	6583	American Samoa	FJ	7074	Fiji	LB	7666	Lebanon
AT	6584	Austria	FK	7075	Falkland Islands	LC	7667	Saint Lucia
AU	6585	Australia	FM	7077	Micronesia, Federated States of	LI	7673	Liechtenstein
AW	6587	Aruba	FO	7079	Faroe Islands	LK	7675	Sri Lanka
AZ	6590	Azerbaijan	FR	7082	France	LR	7682	Liberia
BA	6665	Bosnia and Herzegovina	GA	7165	Gabon	LS	7683	Lesotho
BB	6666	Barbados	GB	7166	United Kingdom	LT	7684	Lithuania
BD	6668	Bangladesh	GD	7168	Grenada	LU	7685	Luxembourg
BE	6669	Belgium	GE	7169	Georgia	LV	7686	Latvia
BF	6670	Burkina Faso	GF	7170	French Guiana	LY	7689	Libyan Arab Jamahiriya
BG	6671	Bulgaria	GH	7172	Ghana	MA	7765	Morocco
BH	6672	Bahrain	GI	7173	Gibraltar	MC	7767	Monaco
BI	6673	Burundi	GL	7176	Greenland	MD	7768	Moldova, Republic of
BJ	6674	Benin	GM	7177	Gambia	MG	7771	Madagascar
BM	6677	Bermuda	GN	7178	Guinea	MH	7772	Marshall Islands
BN	6678	Brunei Darussalam	GP	7180	Guadeloupe	MK	7775	Macedonia, The former Yugoslav Republic of
BO	6679	Bolivia	GQ	7181	Equatorial Guinea			
BR	6682	Brazil	GR	7182	Greece	ML	7776	Mali
BS	6683	Bahamas	GS	7183	South Georgia and the South Sandwich Islands	MM	7777	Myanmar
BT	6684	Bhutan				MN	7778	Mongolia
BV	6686	Bouvet Island	GT	7184	Guatemala	MO	7779	Macau
BW	6687	Botswana	GU	7185	Guam	MP	7780	Northern Mariana Islands
BY	6689	Belarus	GW	7187	Guinea-Bissau	MQ	7781	Martinique
BZ	6690	Belize	GY	7189	Guyana	MR	7782	Mauritania
CA	6765	Canada	HK	7275	Hong Kong	MS	7783	Montserrat
CC	6767	Cocos (Keeling) Islands	HM	7277	Heard Island and McDonald Islands	MT	7784	Malta
CD	6768	Congo, the Democratic Republic of the				MU	7785	Mauritius
CF	6770	Central African Republic	HN	7278	Honduras	MV	7786	Maldives
CG	6771	Congo	HR	7282	Croatia	MW	7787	Malawi
CH	6772	Switzerland	HT	7284	Haiti	MX	7788	Mexico
CI	6773	Cote d'Ivoire	HU	7285	Hungary	MY	7789	Malaysia
CK	6775	Cook Islands	ID	7368	Indonesia	MZ	7790	Mozambique
CL	6776	Chile	IE	7369	Ireland	NA	7865	Namibia
CM	6777	Cameroon	IL	7376	Israel	NC	7867	New Caledonia
CN	6778	China	IN	7378	India	NE	7869	Niger
CO	6779	Colombia	IO	7379	British Indian Ocean Territory	NF	7870	Norfolk Island
CR	6782	Costa Rica	IQ	7381	Iraq	NG	7871	Nigeria
CU	6785	Cuba	IR	7382	Iran, Islamic Republic of	NI	7873	Nicaragua
CV	6786	Cape Verde	IS	7383	Iceland	NL	7876	Netherlands
CX	6788	Christmas Island	IT	7384	Italy	NO	7879	Norway
CY	6789	Cyprus	JM	7477	Jamaica	NP	7880	Nepal
CZ	6790	Czech Republic	JO	7479	Jordan	NR	7882	Nauru
DE	6869	Germany	JP	7480	Japan	NU	7885	Niue
DJ	6874	Djibouti	KE	7569	Kenya	NZ	7890	New Zealand
DK	6875	Denmark	KG	7571	Kyrgyzstan	OM	7977	Oman
			KH	7572	Cambodia	PA	8065	Panama

Abbreviation	Code	Country	Abbreviation	Code	Country	Abbreviation	Code	Country
PE	8069	Peru	SJ	8374	Svalbard and Jan Mayen	TW	8487	Taiwan, Province of China
PF	8070	French Polynesia	SK	8375	Slovakia	TZ	8490	Tanzania, United Republic of
PG	8071	Papua New Guinea	SL	8376	Sierra Leone	UA	8565	Ukraine
PH	8072	Philippines	SM	8377	San Marino	UG	8571	Uganda
PK	8075	Pakistan	SN	8378	Senegal	UM	8577	United States Minor Outlying Islands
PL	8076	Poland	SO	8379	Somalia	US	8583	United States
PM	8077	Saint Pierre and Miquelon	SR	8382	Suriname	UY	8589	Uruguay
PN	8078	Pitcairn	ST	8384	Sao Tome and Principe	UZ	8590	Uzbekistan
PR	8082	Puerto Rico	SV	8386	El Salvador	VA	8665	Holy See (Vatican City State)
PT	8084	Portugal	SY	8389	Syrian Arab Republic	VC	8667	Saint Vincent and the Grenadines
PW	8087	Palau	SZ	8390	Swaziland	VE	8669	Venezuela
PY	8089	Paraguay	TC	8467	Turks and Caicos Islands	VG	8671	Virgin Island, British
QA	8165	Qatar	TD	8468	Chad	VI	8673	Virgin Islands, U.S
RE	8269	Reunion	TF	8470	French Southern Territories	VN	8678	Viet Nam
RO	8279	Romania	TG	8471	Togo	VU	8685	Vanuatu
RU	8285	Russian Federation	TH	8472	Thailand	WF	8770	Wallis and Futuna
RW	8287	Rwanda	TJ	8474	Tajikistan	WS	8783	Samoa
SA	8365	Saudi Arabia	TK	8475	Tokelau	YE	8969	Yemen
SB	8366	Solomon Islands	TM	8477	Turkmenistan	YT	8984	Mayotte
SC	8367	Seychelles	TN	8478	Tunisia	YU	8985	Yugoslavia
SD	8368	Sudan	TO	8479	Tonga	ZA	9065	South Africa
SE	8369	Sweden	TP	8480	East Timor	ZM	9077	Zambia
SG	8371	Singapore	TR	8482	Turkey	ZW	9087	Zimbabwe
SH	8372	Saint Helena	TT	8484	Trinidad and Tobago			
SI	8373	Slovenia	TV	8486	Tuvalu			

## In Case of Difficulty

If you encounter a problem, please turn the power off, then on again. If the unit is still not functioning normally, please review the items in the following checklist. This guide will help you isolate the problem if the unit is at fault. Otherwise, make sure the rest of your system is properly connected, or then consult your authorized Alpine dealer.

### Basic

#### No function or display.

- Vehicle's ignition is off.
  - If connected according to the instructions, the unit will not operate with the vehicle's ignition off.
- Improper power lead connections.
  - Check power lead connections.
- Blown fuse.
  - Check the fuse on the battery lead of the unit; replace with the proper value if necessary.
- Internal micro-computer malfunctioned due to interference noise, etc.
  - Press the RESET switch with a ballpoint pen or other pointed article.

#### No sound or unnatural sound.

- Incorrect setting of volume/balance/fader controls.
  - Readjust the controls.
- Connections are not properly or securely made.
  - Check the connections and firmly connect.

#### Screen not displayed.

- Brightness/Contrast control is set at the minimum position.
  - Adjust the Brightness/Contrast control.
- Temperature in the vehicle is too low.
  - Increase the vehicle's interior temperature to operation temperature range.
- Connections to the DVD are not securely made.
  - Check the connections and firmly connect.
- The Parking Brake Lead is not connected.
- The Parking Brake is not engaged.
  - Connect the Parking Brake Lead, then engage the Parking Brake. (See page 102)

#### Movement of displayed picture is abnormal.

- Temperature in the vehicle is too high.
  - Allow the vehicle's interior temperature to cool.

#### The optional remote control is inoperative.

- The remote control sensor setting of "Remote Sensor Setting" (page 41) is not set to this unit ("Front").
  - Set for "Front".

### Radio

#### Unable to receive stations.

- No antenna, or open connection in the antenna cable.
  - Make sure the antenna is properly connected; replace the antenna or cable if necessary.

#### Unable to tune stations in the seek mode.

- You are in a weak signal area.
  - Make sure the tuner is in DX mode.
- If the area you are in is a primary signal area, the antenna may not be grounded and connected properly.
  - Check your antenna connections; make sure the antenna is properly grounded at its mounting location.
- The antenna may not be the proper length.
  - Make sure the antenna is fully extended; if broken, replace the antenna with a new one.

#### Broadcast is noisy.

- The antenna is not the proper length.
  - Extend the antenna fully; replace it if it is broken.
- The antenna is poorly grounded.
  - Make sure the antenna is grounded properly at its mounting location.
- The station signal is weak and noisy.
  - If above solution does not work, tune in another station.

### Disc

#### Disc playback sound is wavering.

- Moisture condensation in the disc Module.
  - Allow enough time for the condensation to evaporate (about 1 hour).

#### Disc insertion not possible.

- A disc is already in this unit.
  - Eject the disc and remove it.
- The disc is being improperly inserted.
  - Insert the disc correctly. (See page 19)

#### Unable to fast forward or backward the disc.

- The disc has been damaged.
  - Eject the disc and discard it; using a damaged disc in your unit can cause damage to the mechanism.

#### Disc playback sound skips due to vibration.

- Improper mounting of the unit.
  - Securely re-mount the unit.
- Disc is very dirty.
  - Clean the disc.
- Disc has scratches.
  - Change the disc.
- The pick-up lens is dirty.
  - Do not use a commercially available lens cleaner disc. Consult your nearest Alpine dealer.


**Disc playback sound skips without vibration.**

- Dirty or scratched disc.
  - Clean the disc; a damaged disc should be replaced.

**CD-R/CD-RW/DVD-R/DVD-RW/DVD+R/DVD+RW playback not possible.**

- Close session (finalisation) has not been performed.
  - Perform finalisation and attempt playback again.

**Error displays.**

- Mechanical error.
  - Touch [ Disc] on the Open/Tilt screen. After the error indication disappears, insert the disc again. If the above-mentioned solution does not solve the problem, consult your nearest Alpine dealer.

**MP3/WMA/AAC is not played back.**

- Writing error occurred. The CD format is not compatible.
  - Make sure the CD has been written in a supported format. Refer to "About MP3/WMA/AAC" (pages 33 to 34), then rewrite in the format supported by this device.

**Unit does not operate.**

- Condensation.
  - Wait a while (about 1 hour) for the condensation to dry.

**Playback does not start.**

- Disc is loaded upside-down.
  - Check the disc and load it with the labelled side facing upward.
- Disc is dirty.
  - Clean the disc.
- A disc not able to play back with this unit is loaded.
  - Check if the disc is able to be played back.
- Parental lock is set.
  - Cancel the parental lock or change the rating level.

**Picture is unclear or noisy.**

- Disc is being fast-forwarded or fast-reversed.
  - The picture may be slightly disturbed, but this is normal.
- Vehicle's battery power is weak.
  - Check the battery power and wiring.  
(The unit may malfunction if the battery power is under 11 volts with a load applied.)

**Image stops sometimes.**

- Disc is scratched.
  - Replaced with a non-scratched disc.

**Navigation****The Navigation cannot work properly.**

- Reset Navigation system.
  - Reinsert the SD card and turn the ignition key off, and then set to ON again.

---

## If this Message Appears

---

Various messages are displayed on the screen during operation. In addition to the messages telling you the current status or providing guidance for the next operation, there are also the following error messages. If one of these error messages is displayed, carefully follow the instructions in the solution column.

**System****If you are driving, please pull over before using this function.**

- A setup operation, etc., was carried out while the vehicle was running.
  - Move the vehicle to a safe location, stop, and engage the parking brake, then carry out this operation.

---

**USB current error.**

- Abnormal current is run to the USB connector device.
  - Turn the ignition key off, and then set to ON again.
  - Attempt to connect another iPod/iPhone/USB Memory device.

---

**Unable to access the DVD drive.****The system will reset.**

- An access error to DVD drive occurred for some reasons.
  - The unit is rebooted automatically.

---

**Unable to access the DVD drive.****Please inquire details from the service centre.**

- An access error to DVD drive occurred for some reasons.
  - Please ask Service Centre for help.

---

**Please insert the SD Memory Card****and press the Eject button to close.**


- The SD memory card is in a half insert state and it blocks the sliding screen.
    - Insert the SD memory card into the slot until it is locked or take it out.
-



## **Audio/Visual**

### **Read error.**

#### **Please check the Disc.**

- Scratched disc, contaminated disc/poor recording/disc incompatible with this unit.
    - Touch [ Disc] on the Open/Tilt screen.
    - Change the disc.
- 

#### **Connected USB Device is not supported.**

- An iPod/iPhone that is not supported by the unit is connected.
    - Connect an iPod/iPhone that is supported by the unit.
    - Reset the iPod.
  - A USB device that is not supported by the unit is connected.
    - Attempt to connect another USB Memory device.
  - Communication error.
    - Turn the ignition key off, and then set to ON again.
    - Check the display by reconnecting between the iPod/iPhone and the unit, using the iPod/iPhone cable.
    - Check the display by reconnecting between the USB Memory device and the unit.
  - Caused by the iPod/iPhone Software Version not being compatible with this unit.
    - Update the iPod/iPhone Software Version to be compatible with this unit.
  - The iPod/iPhone is not verified.
    - Change another iPod/iPhone.
- 

#### **Region Code Violation.**

- Disc does not match regional code number.
    - Load a disc that matches the regional code number.
- 

#### **No data.**

- There are no data in the iPod/iPhone.
    - Download data to the iPod/iPhone and connect to the X008AU/X008EU/INE-W957A/INE-W957E.
  - There are no data in the USB Memory.
    - Download data to the USB Memory and connect to this unit.
- 

#### **Un-readable song was skipped.**

- A copy-protected WMA file has been detected.
    - You can only play back non-copy-protected files.
  - A sampling rate/bit rate not supported by the unit is used.
    - Use a sampling rate/bit rate supported by the unit.
- 

## **BLUETOOTH**

### **Please check BLUETOOTH audio device.**

- The BLUETOOTH audio device was not connected correctly.
    - Check the settings for X008AU/X008EU/INE-W957A/INE-W957E and the BLUETOOTH audio device and reconnect.
- 

#### **Please check mobile device.**

- The mobile phone was not connected correctly.
    - Check the settings for X008AU/X008EU/INE-W957A/INE-W957E and the mobile phone and reconnect.
- 

#### **Unable to download phonebook.**

- Phonebook failed to read due to mobile phone disconnection, etc.
    - Check the mobile phone connection, and then conduct synchronizing and adding again. (See page 65)
  - The connected mobile phone does not support synchronizing of its phone book.
    - Connect the mobile phone that supports synchronizing the phone book, then synchronize again. (See page 65)
- 

## **Navigation**

### **The vehicle's position is erroneous.**

- The GPS reception is poor.
  - Drive the vehicle in an area of good GPS reception to allow the unit to recalibrate itself. Move to a location where strong GPS reception is possible.

#### **No operation**

- Moisture condensation
  - Allow enough time for the condensation to evaporate (about 1 hour).
- Ambient Temperature
  - Make sure the temperature inside the vehicle is between 0°C and 45°C (32°F and 113°F).

### **Playing back a DRM protected DivX File**

Some operations cannot be performed while displaying the following message.

#### **Authorization Error.**

##### **This player is not authorized to play this video.**

- The version of the DRM protected DivX<sup>®</sup> File is not supported by this unit.
    - Play the supported DivX<sup>®</sup> File.
-

### Rental Expired.

- The file being attempted to play has a limited number of viewings. The viewing limit has been reached and can no longer be played on this device. After the message has been displayed, the beginning of the next file will automatically be played back.

### This DivX rental has used XX out of YY views. Continue?

- If the total number of viewings for this file has not been exceeded, the views remaining is displayed.
  - To play back, select **[OK]**. If the next file is to be played back, select **[Cancel]**.

### Do you wish to stop playing rental file?

- While playing back a rental file, "Do you wish to stop playing rental file?" is displayed when the following operations are performed. Selecting **[OK]**, reduces the number of views by 1.
  - Folder Up/Down
  - STOP
  - Search operation
  - Move to the first/last DivX<sup>®</sup> file by Chapter Up/Down
  - To interrupt the playback, touch **[OK]**, or touch **[Cancel]** to not interrupt.

### Audio format not supported.

- The file being played is a DivX<sup>®</sup> file with an unsupported audio format, so only the video data is played.
  - Play a DivX<sup>®</sup> file with a supported audio format.

### Video frame rate not supported.

- The file being played is a DivX<sup>®</sup> file with an unsupported frame rate.
  - Play a DivX<sup>®</sup> file with a supported frame rate.

### Video resolution not supported.

- The file being played is a DivX<sup>®</sup> file with an unsupported resolution.
  - Play a DivX<sup>®</sup> file with a supported resolution.

## Specifications

### MONITOR SECTION

Screen Size	7.0" (INE-W957A/INE-W957E) 8.0" (X008AU/X008EU)
LCD Type	Transparent type TN LCD
Operation System	TFT active matrix
Number of Picture Elements	1,152,000 pcs. (800 × 480 × 3 (RGB))
Effective Number of Picture Elements	99% or more
Illumination System	LED

### FM TUNER SECTION

Tuning Range	87.5 – 108.0 MHz
Mono Usable Sensitivity	9.3 dBf (0.8 μV/75 ohms)
Alternate Channel Selectivity	80 dB
Signal-to-Noise Ratio	65 dB
Stereo Separation	35 dB
Capture Ratio	2.0 dB

### AW TUNER SECTION

Tuning Range	531 – 1,602 kHz
Sensitivity (IEC Standard)	22.5 μV/27.0 dBf

### USB SECTION

USB requirements	USB 1.1/2.0
Max. Power Consumption	1,000 mA
USB Class	USB (Play From Device)/ USB (Mass Storage Class)
File System	FAT12/16/32
MP3 Decoding	MPEG-1/2 AUDIO Layer-3
WMA Decoding	Windows Media™ Audio
AAC Decoding	AAC-LC format ".m4a" file
Number of Channels	2-Channels (Stereo)
Frequency Response*	5 – 20,000 Hz (±1 dB)
Total Harmonic Distortion	0.008% (at 1 kHz)
Dynamic Range	95 dB (at 1 kHz)
Signal-to-Noise Ratio	100 dB
Channel Separation	85 dB (at 1 kHz)

\* Frequency response may differ depending on the encoder software/bit rate.

### CD/DVD SECTION

Frequency Response	5 – 20,000 Hz (±1 dB)
Wow & Flutter (% WRMS)	Below measurable limits
Total Harmonic Distortion	0.008% (at 1 kHz)
Dynamic Range	95 dB (at 1 kHz)
Channel Separation	85 dB (at 1 kHz)
Horizontal resolution	500 lines or greater
Video output level	1Vp-p (75 ohms)
Video S/N ratio	DVD: 60 dB
Audio S/N ratio	100 dB

## **PICKUP**

Wave length	DVD: 666 nm CD: 785 nm
Laser power	CLASS II

## **CAUTION**

CAUTION-Laser radiation when open, DO NOT STARE INTO BEAM

(Bottom side of player)

## **GPS SECTION**

GPS Reception frequency	1,575.42 ±1 MHz
GPS Reception sensitivity	-130 dB max.

## **BLUETOOTH SECTION**

BLUETOOTH Specification	Bluetooth V2.1+EDR
Output Power	+4 dBm Max. (Power class 2)
Profile	HFP (Hands-Free Profile) OPP (Object Push Profile) PBAP (Phone Book Access Profile) A2DP (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile) AVRCP (Audio/Video Remote Control Profile)

## **GENERAL**

Power Requirement	14.4 V DC (11–16 V allowable)
Operating temperature	-4°F to +140°F (-20°C to + 60°C)
Maximum Power Output	50 W × 4
Weight	2.7 kg (INE-W957A/INE-W957E) 2.9 kg (X008AU/X008EU)
Audio output level	
Preout (Front, Rear):	4V/10k ohms (max.)
Preout (Subwoofer):	4V/10k ohms (max.)
AUX OUT:	1.2V/10k ohms (max.)

## **CHASSIS SIZE**

Width	178 mm
Height	100 mm
Depth	164 mm

## **NOSE SIZE**

Width	170 mm (INE-W957A/ INE-W957E) 190 mm (X008AU/X008EU)
Height	96 mm (INE-W957A/INE-W957E) 121 mm (X008AU/X008EU)
Depth	17 mm (INE-W957A/INE-W957E) 22 mm (X008AU/X008EU)

- Due to continuous product improvement, specifications and design are subject to change without notice.
- The LCD panel is manufactured using an extremely high precision manufacturing technology. Its effective pixel ratio is over 99.99%. This means that there is a possibility that 0.01% of the pixels could be either always ON or OFF.

# END USER LICENCE AGREEMENT (Microsoft)

You have acquired a device ("DEVICE") that includes software licensed by Alpine Electronics, Inc. (collectively "ALPINE") from an affiliate of Microsoft Corporation (collectively "MS"). Those installed software products of MS origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.

IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENCE AGREEMENT ("EULA"), DO NOT USE THE DEVICE OR COPY THE SOFTWARE INSTEAD, PROMPTLY CONTACT ALPINE FOR INSTRUCTIONS ON RETURN OF THE UNUSED DEVICE(S) FOR A REFUND. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICE, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).

## GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENCE,

This EULA grants you the following licence: You may use the SOFTWARE only on the DEVICE.

## NOT FAULT TOLERANT.

THE SOFTWARE IS NOT FAULT TOLERANT. ALPINE HAS INDEPENDENTLY DETERMINED HOW TO USE THE SOFTWARE IN THE DEVICE, AND MS HAS RELIED UPON ALPINE TO CONDUCT SUFFICIENT TESTING TO DETERMINE THAT THE SOFTWARE IS SUITABLE FOR SUCH USE.

## NO WARRANTIES FOR THE SOFTWARE,

THE SOFTWARE is provided "AS IS" and with all faults. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, ACCURACY, AND EFFORT (INCLUDING LACK OF NEGLIGENCE) IS WITH YOU. ALSO, THERE IS NO WARRANTY AGAINST INTERFERENCE WITH YOUR ENJOYMENT OF THE SOFTWARE OR AGAINST INFRINGEMENT. IF YOU HAVE RECEIVED ANY WARRANTIES REGARDING THE DEVICE OR SOFTWARE THOSE WARRANTIES DO NOT ORIGINATE FROM, AND ARE NOT BINDING ON, MS.

## NO LIABILITY FOR CERTAIN DAMAGES.

EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, MS SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. IN NO EVENT SHALL MS BE LIABLE FOR ANY AMOUNT IN EXCESS OF U.S. TWO HUNDRED FIFTY DOLLARS (U.S. \$250.00).

## LIMITATIONS ON REVERSE ENGINEERING, DECOMPILATION, AND DISASSEMBLY

You may not reverse engineer, decompile, or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation.

## ADDITIONAL SOFTWARE/SERVICES.

The SOFTWARE may permit ALPINE, MS, Microsoft Corporation or their affiliates to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet – base service components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components").

- If ALPINE provides or makes available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply.
- If MS, Microsoft Corporation or their affiliates make available Supplemental Components, and no other EULA terms are provided, then the terms of this EULA shall apply, except that MS, Microsoft Corporation or affiliate entity providing the Supplemental Component(s) shall be licensor of the Supplemental Component(s).
- ALPINE, MS, Microsoft Corporation and their affiliates reserve the right to discontinue any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

## RECOVERY MEDIA.

If SOFTWARE is provided by ALPINE on separate media and labelled "Recovery Media" you may use the Recovery Media solely to restore or reinstall the SOFTWARE originally installed on the DEVICE.

## UPGRADES.

If the SOFTWARE is provided by ALPINE separate from the DEVICE on separate media or via web download or other means, and is labelled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICE as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

## TERMINATION.

Without prejudice to any other rights, ALPINE or MS may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA. In such event, you must destroy all copies of the SOFTWARE and all of its component parts.

## INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS.

All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets", incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold.

You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

## TRADEMARKS.

This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of ALPINE, MS, Microsoft Corporation, their affiliates or suppliers.

## PRODUCT SUPPORT.

Product support for the SOFTWARE is not provided by MS, its parent corporation Microsoft Corporation, or their affiliates or subsidiaries. For product support, please refer to ALPINE support number provided in the documentation for the DEVICE. Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact ALPINE for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICE.

## SOFTWARE TRANSFER ALLOWED BUT WITH RESTRICTIONS.

You may permanently transfer rights under this EULA only as part of a permanent sale or transfer of the Device, and only if the recipient agrees to this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must also include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.

## EXPORT RESTRICTION.

You acknowledge that SOFTWARE is of US-origin. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and country destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments. For additional information on exporting the SOFTWARE, see <http://www.microsoft.com/exporting/>

## END USER LICENCE AGREEMENT (NAVTEQ)

PLEASE READ THIS END USER LICENCE AGREEMENT CAREFUL BEFORE USING THE NAVTEQ DATABASE

### NOTICE TO THE USER

THIS IS A LICENCE AGREEMENT - AND NOT AN AGREEMENT FOR SALE - BETWEEN YOU AND NAVTEQ B.V. FOR YOUR COPY OF THE NAVTEQ NAVIGABLE MAP DATABASE, INCLUDING ASSOCIATED COMPUTER SOFTWARE, MEDIA AND EXPLANATORY PRINTED DOCUMENTATION PUBLISHED BY NAVTEQ (JOINTLY "THE DATABASE"). BY USING THE DATABASE, YOU ACCEPT AND AGREE TO ALL TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THIS END USER LICENCE AGREEMENT ("AGREEMENT"). IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THE TERMS OF THIS AGREEMENT, PROMPTLY RETURN THE DATABASE, ALONG WITH ALL OTHER ACCOMPANYING ITEMS, TO YOUR SUPPLIER FOR A REFUND.

### OWNERSHIP

The Database and the copyrights and intellectual property or neighboring rights therein are owned by NAVTEQ or its licensors. Ownership of the media on which the Database is contained is retained by NAVTEQ and/or your supplier until after you have paid in full any amounts due to NAVTEQ and/or your supplier pursuant to this Agreement or similar agreement(s) under which goods are provided to you.

### LICENCE GRANT

NAVTEQ grants you a non-exclusive licence to use the Database for your personal use or, if applicable, for use in your business' internal operations. This licence does not include the right to grant sub-licences.

### LIMITATIONS ON USE

The Database is restricted for use in the specific system for which it was created. Except to the extent explicitly permitted by mandatory laws (e.g. national laws based on the European Software Directive (91/250) and the Database Directive (96/9)), you may not extract or reutilize substantial parts of the contents of the Database nor reproduce, copy, modify, adapt, translate, disassemble, decompile, reverse engineer any portion of the Database. If you wish to obtain interoperability information as meant in (the national laws based on) the European Software Directive, you shall grant NAVTEQ reasonable opportunity to provide said information on reasonable terms, including costs, to be determined by NAVTEQ.

### TRANSFER OF LICENCE

You may not transfer the Database to third parties, except when installed in the system for which it was created or when you do not retain any copy of the Database, and provided that the transferee agrees to all terms and conditions of this Agreement and confirms this in writing to NAVTEQ. Multi-disc sets may only be transferred or sold as a complete set as provided by NAVTEQ and not as subset thereof.

## LIMITED WARRANTY

NAVTEQ warrants that, subject to the warnings set out below, for a period of 12 months after acquisition of your copy of the Database, it will perform substantially in accordance with NAVTEQ's Criteria for Accuracy and Completeness existing on the date you acquired the Database; these criteria are available from NAVTEQ at your request. If the Database does not perform in accordance with this limited warranty, NAVTEQ will use reasonable efforts to repair or replace your non-conforming copy of the Database. If these efforts do not lead to performance of the Database in accordance with the warranties set out herein, you will have the option to either receive a reasonable refund of the price you paid for the Database or to rescind this Agreement. This shall be NAVTEQ's entire liability and your sole remedy against NAVTEQ. Except as expressly provided in this section, NAVTEQ does not warrant nor make any representations regarding the use of results of the use of the Database in terms of its correctness, accuracy, reliability, or otherwise. NAVTEQ does not warrant that the Database is or will be error free. No oral or written information or advice provided by NAVTEQ, your supplier or any other person shall create a warranty or in any way increase the scope of the limited warranty described above. The limited warranty set forth in this Agreement does not affect or prejudice any statutory legal rights that you may have under the legal warranty against hidden defects.

If you did not acquire the Database from NAVTEQ directly, you may have statutory rights against the person from whom you have acquired the Database in addition to the rights granted by NAVTEQ hereunder according to the law of your jurisdiction. The above warranty of NAVTEQ shall not affect such statutory rights and you may assert such rights in addition to the warranty rights granted herein.

## LIMITATION OF LIABILITY

The price of the Database does not include any consideration for assumption of risk of consequential, indirect or unlimited direct damages which may arise in connection with your use of the Database. Accordingly, in no event shall NAVTEQ be liable for any consequential or indirect damages, including without limitation, loss of revenue, data, or use, incurred by you or any third party arising out of your use of the Database, whether in an action in contract or tort or based on a warranty, even if NAVTEQ has been advised of the possibility of such damages. In any event NAVTEQ's liability for direct damages is limited to the price of your copy of the Database.

THE LIMITED WARRANTY AND LIMITATION OF LIABILITY, SET FORTH IN THIS AGREEMENT, DO NOT AFFECT OR PREJUDICE YOUR STATUTORY RIGHTS WHERE YOU HAVE ACQUIRED THE DATABASE OTHERWISE THAN IN THE COURSE OF A BUSINESS.

## WARNINGS

The Database may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results. The Database does not include or reflect information on - inter alia - neighborhood safety; law enforcement; emergency assistance; construction work; road or lane closures; vehicle or speed restrictions; road slope or grade; bridge height, weight or other limits; road or traffic conditions; special events; traffic congestion; or travel time.

## GOVERNING LAW

This Agreement shall be governed by the laws of the jurisdiction, in which you reside at the date of acquisition of the Database. Should you at that moment reside outside the European Union or Switzerland, the law of the jurisdiction within the European Union or Switzerland where you acquired the Database shall apply. In all other cases, or if the jurisdiction where you acquired the Database cannot be defined, the laws of the Netherlands shall apply. The courts competent at your place of residence at the time you acquired the Database shall have jurisdiction over any dispute arising out of, or relating to this Agreement, without prejudice to NAVTEQ's right to bring claims at your then current place of residence.

# Installation and Connections

Before installing or connecting the unit, please read the following and pages 8 to 13 of this manual thoroughly for proper use.

## Warning

### MAKE THE CORRECT CONNECTIONS.

Failure to make the proper connections may result in fire or product damage.

### USE ONLY IN CARS WITH A 12 VOLT NEGATIVE GROUND.

(Check with your dealer if you are not sure.) Failure to do so may result in fire, etc.

### BEFORE WIRING, DISCONNECT THE CABLE FROM THE NEGATIVE BATTERY TERMINAL.

Failure to do so may result in electric shock or injury due to electrical shorts.

### DO NOT ALLOW CABLES TO BECOME ENTANGLED IN SURROUNDING OBJECTS.

Arrange wiring and cables in compliance with the manual to prevent obstructions when driving. Cables or wiring that obstruct or hang up on places such as the steering wheel, shift lever, brake pedals, etc. can be extremely hazardous.

### DO NOT SPLICE INTO ELECTRICAL CABLES.

Never cut away cable insulation to supply power to other equipment. Doing so will exceed the current carrying capacity of the wire and result in fire or electric shock.

### DO NOT DAMAGE PIPE OR WIRING WHEN DRILLING HOLES.

When drilling holes in the chassis for installation, take precautions so as not to contact, damage or obstruct pipes, fuel lines, tanks or electrical wiring. Failure to take such precautions may result in fire.

### DO NOT USE BOLTS OR NUTS IN THE BRAKE OR STEERING SYSTEMS TO MAKE GROUND CONNECTIONS.

Bolts or nuts used for the brake or steering systems (or any other safety-related system), or tanks should NEVER be used for installations or ground connections. Using such parts could disable control of the vehicle and cause fire etc.

### KEEP SMALL OBJECTS SUCH AS SCREWS OUT OF THE REACH OF CHILDREN.

Swallowing them may result in serious injury. If swallowed, consult a physician immediately.

### DO NOT INSTALL IN LOCATIONS WHICH MIGHT HINDER VEHICLE OPERATION, SUCH AS THE STEERING WHEEL OR SHIFT LEVER.

Doing so may obstruct forward vision or hamper movement etc. and results in serious accident.

## Caution

### HAVE THE WIRING AND INSTALLATION DONE BY EXPERTS.

The wiring and installation of this unit requires special technical skill and experience. To ensure safety, always contact the dealer where you purchased this product to have the work done.

### USE SPECIFIED ACCESSORY PARTS AND INSTALL THEM SECURELY.

Be sure to use only the specified accessory parts. Use of other than designated parts may damage this unit internally or may not securely install the unit in place. This may cause parts to become loose resulting in hazards or product failure.

### ARRANGE THE WIRING SO IT IS NOT CRIMPED OR PINCHED BY A SHARP METAL EDGE.

Route the cables and wiring away from moving parts (like the seat rails) or sharp or pointed edges. This will prevent crimping and damage to the wiring. If wiring passes through a hole in metal, use a rubber grommet to prevent the wire's insulation from being cut by the metal edge of the hole.

### DO NOT INSTALL IN LOCATIONS WITH HIGH MOISTURE OR DUST.

Avoid installing the unit in locations with high incidence of moisture or dust. Moisture or dust that penetrates into this unit may result in product failure.

## Precautions

- Be sure to disconnect the cable from the (–) battery post before installing your X008AU/X008EU/INE-W957A/INE-W957E. This will reduce any chance of damage to the unit in case of a short-circuit.
- Be sure to connect the colour coded leads according to the diagram. Incorrect connections may cause the unit to malfunction or damage to the vehicle's electrical system.
- When making connections to the vehicle's electrical system, be aware of the factory installed components (e.g. on-board computer). Do not tap into these leads to provide power for this unit. When connecting the X008AU/X008EU/INE-W957A/INE-W957E to the fuse box, make sure the fuse for the intended circuit of the X008AU/X008EU/INE-W957A/INE-W957E has the appropriate amperage. Failure to do so may result in damage to the unit and/or the vehicle. When in doubt, consult your Alpine dealer.
- The X008AU/X008EU/INE-W957A/INE-W957E uses female RCA-type jacks for connection to other units (e.g. amplifier) having RCA connectors. You may need an adaptor to connect other units. If so, please contact your authorized Alpine dealer for assistance.
- Be sure to connect the speaker (–) leads to the speaker (–) terminal. Never connect left and right channel speaker cables to each other or to the vehicle body.
- The Display must be completely retracted in the casing when installing. If it is not, problems may occur.
- When installing in automobiles, make sure the Display can open/close without coming in contact with the gear shift.

#### IMPORTANT

Please record the serial number of your unit in the space provided below and keep it as a permanent record. The serial number plate is located on the bottom of the unit.

SERIAL NUMBER: \_\_\_\_\_

INSTALLATION DATE: \_\_\_\_\_

INSTALLATION TECHNICIAN: \_\_\_\_\_

PLACE OF PURCHASE: \_\_\_\_\_

## Installation

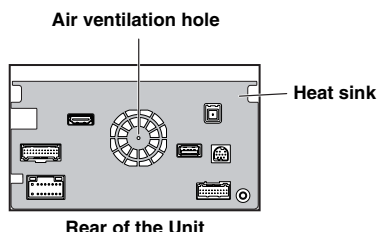
### X008AU/X008EU user

To install the X008AU/X008EU, refer to the manual in the separately purchased installation kit for each car type.

#### Caution

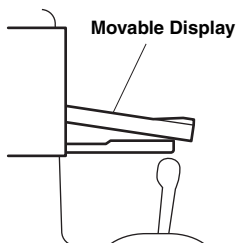
Do not block the unit's fan or heat sink, thus preventing air circulation. If blocked, heat will accumulate inside the unit and may cause a fire.

<example>



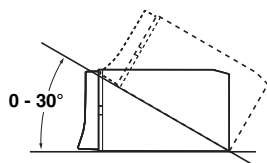
#### Caution concerning the installation location

- 1 Before installing, make sure that the opening and closing of the display will not interfere with operation of the gear shift.



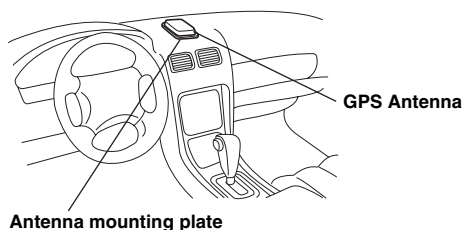
#### 2 Angle of installation

Install at an angle between horizontal and 30°. Note that installing at an angle outside of this range will result in a loss of performance and possibly damage.



#### 3 Mounting the GPS Antenna inside the vehicle.

- 1 Clean the mounting location.
- 2 Put on the GPS Antenna mounting plate.
- 3 Mount the GPS Antenna.



- Mount the GPS Antenna on a flat plane of the dash board or rear tray.
- Some thermal reflection type or thermal absorption type glass may interrupt high frequency waves. If reception is poor with the antenna installed inside the car, try to mount the antenna outside the car.
- Make sure the GPS Antenna is not covered (obstructed) by any metallic surface or object.

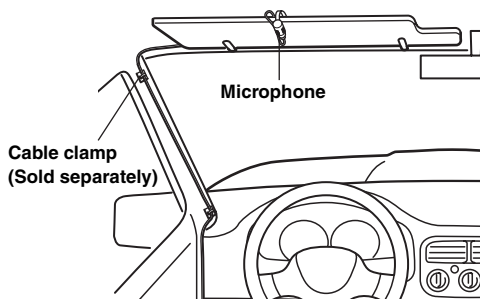


#### 4 Mounting the Microphone.

For safe use, make sure of the following:

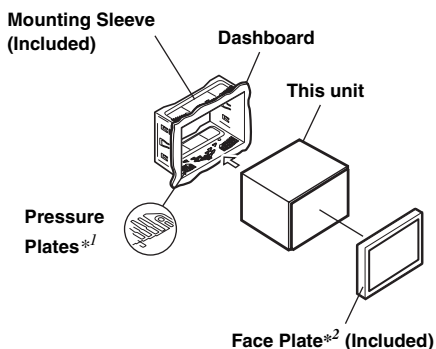
- location is stable and firm.
- driver's view and operations are not obstructed.
- microphone is located where the driver's voice can be easily picked up (on the sun visor, etc.).

When you speak into the microphone, you should not have to change your driving posture. This may cause a distraction, taking your attention away from safely driving your vehicle. Carefully consider direction and distance while mounting the microphone. Confirm that the driver's voice can be easily picked up at the selected location.



### ■ For INE-W957A/INE-W957E

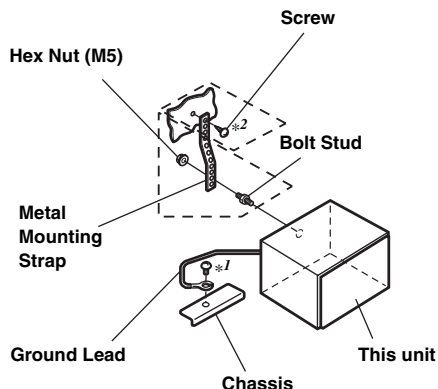
- 5 Remove the mounting sleeve from the main unit (see "Removal" on page 100). Slide the unit into the mounting sleeve and secure it.



\*1 If the installed mounting sleeve is loose in the dashboard, the pressure plates may be bent slightly to remedy the problem.

\*2 The supplied face plate may be mounted.

- 6 Reinforce the head unit with the metal mounting strap (not supplied). Secure the ground lead of the unit to a clean metal spot using a screw (\*1) already attached to the vehicle's chassis. Connect all the leads of the INE-W957A/INE-W957E according to details described in the CONNECTION section.

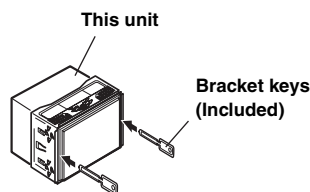


- For the screw marked "\*2," use an appropriate screw for the chosen mounting location.

- 7 Slide the INE-W957A/INE-W957E into the dashboard until it clicks. This ensures that the unit is properly locked and will not accidentally come out from the dashboard.

#### Removal

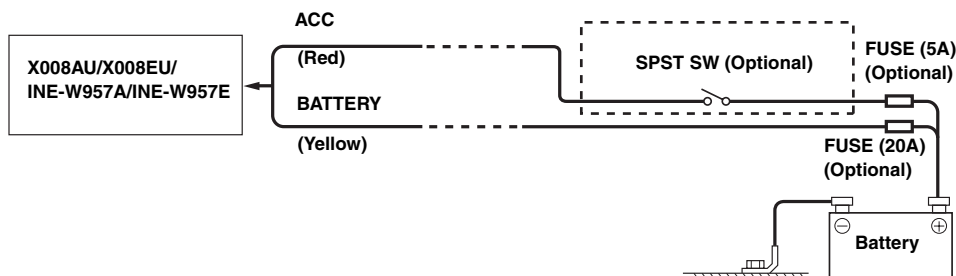
1. Insert the bracket keys into the unit, along the guides on either side. The unit can now be removed from the mounting sleeve.



2. Pull the unit out, keeping it unlocked as you do so.

### Connection Diagram of SPST Switch (sold separately)

(If the ACC power supply is not available)

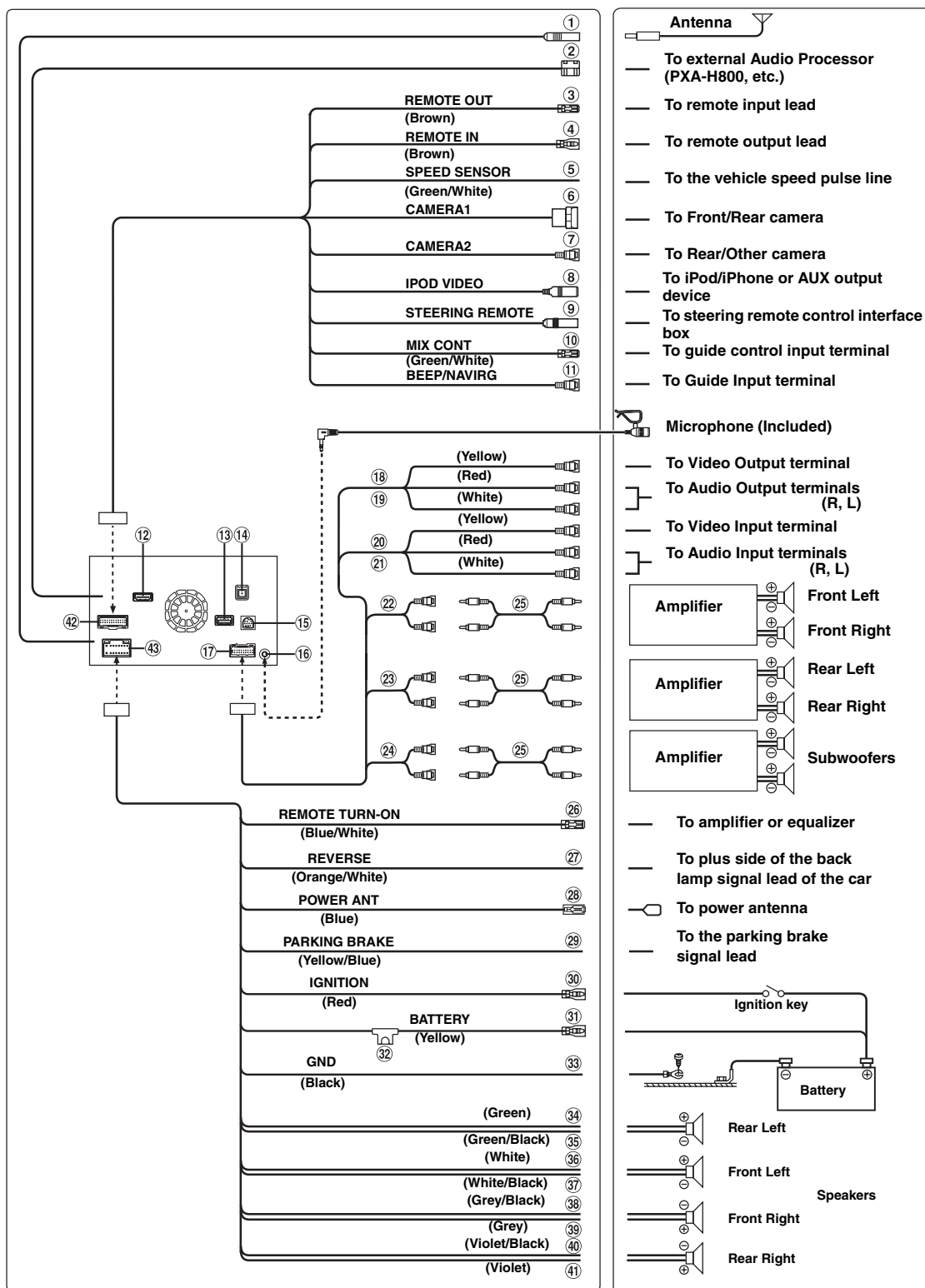


- If your vehicle has no ACC power supply, add an SPST (Single-Pole, Single-Throw) switch (sold separately) and fuse (sold separately).
- The diagram and the fuse amperage shown above are in the case when X008AU/X008EU/INE-W957A/INE-W957E is used individually.
- If the switched power (ignition) lead of the X008AU/X008EU/INE-W957A/INE-W957E is connected directly to the positive (+) post of the vehicle's battery, the X008AU/X008EU/INE-W957A/INE-W957E draws some current (several hundred milliamperes) even when its switch is placed in the OFF position, and the battery may be discharged.

#### **To prevent external noise from entering the audio system.**

- Locate the unit and route the leads at least 10 cm away from the car harness.
- Keep the battery power leads as far away from other leads as possible.
- Connect the ground lead securely to a bare metal spot (remove any paint, dirt or grease if necessary) of the car chassis.
- If you add an optional noise suppressor, connect it as far away from the unit as possible. Your Alpine dealer carries various noise suppressors, contact them for further information.
- Your Alpine dealer knows best about noise prevention measures so consult your dealer for further information.

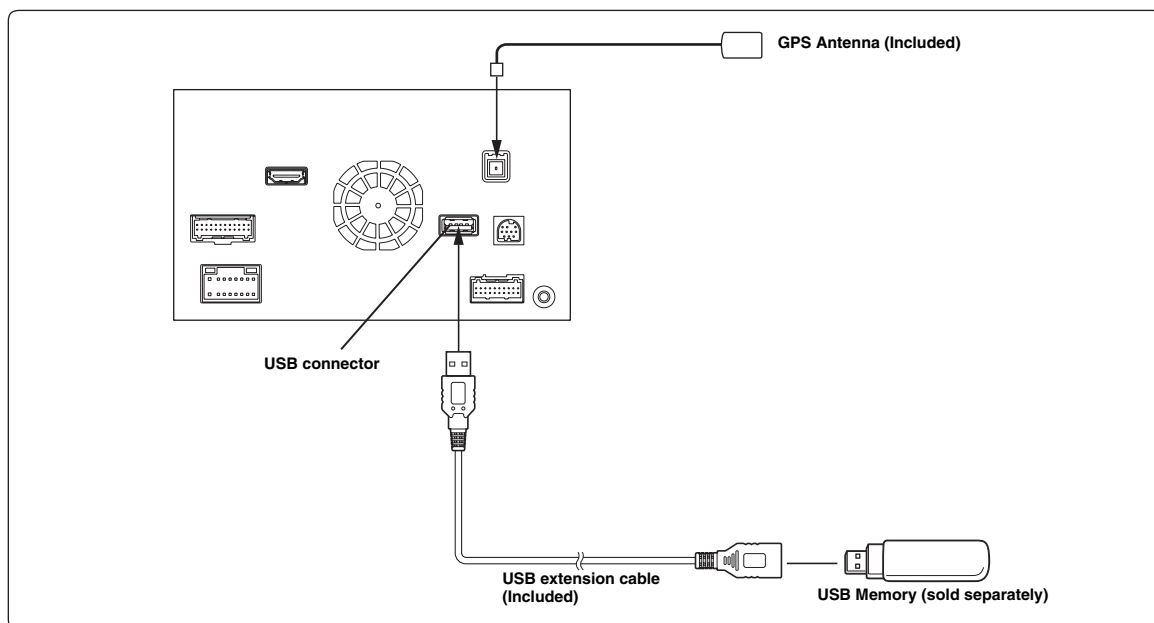
# Connections



- ① **Radio Antenna Receptacle**
- ② **Digital Output Terminal (Optical)**  
Use when combining fiber optic digital input compatible products. Be sure to use the Optical Digital Cable (KWE-610A) (sold separately) only.
- ③ **Remote Control Output Lead (Brown)**  
Connect this lead to the remote control input lead. This lead outputs the controlling signals from the remote control.
- ④ **Remote Control Input Lead (Brown)**  
Connect the external Alpine product to the remote control output lead.
- ⑤ **Speed Sensor Lead (Green/White)**  
Improper connection of the speed pulse line may cause important safety features of the vehicle to fail (such as the brakes or air bags). Such failures may result in an accident and loss of life. We strongly recommend that the installation be performed by a trained, authorized Alpine dealer.
- ⑥ **Direct CAMERA Input Connector**  
Use when the optional direct camera is connected.
- ⑦ **CAMERA Input RCA Connector (Yellow)**  
Use when connecting a camera with RCA Output Connector.
- ⑧ **iPod VIDEO Input Connector (IPOD VIDEO)**  
Input the iPod/ iPhone video signal or AUX video/audio signal.
  - Set "AUX3 In Sel." (page 55) to "iPod Video" when an iPod/iPhone is connected.
  - Set "AUX3 In Sel." (page 55) to "AUX3" when AUX video/ audio is input.
- ⑨ **Steering Remote Control Interface Connector**  
To steering remote control interface box.  
For details about connections, consult your nearest Alpine dealer.
- ⑩ **MIX Control Lead (Green/White)**  
Use when an optional External Audio Processor with guide control input terminal is connected.
  - When this lead is connected to PXA-H800, make sure to turn the ignition key off (ACC OFF) and on (ACC ON) again or turn the unit power off and on again, after setting "Navi Mix" from OFF to ON on PXA-H800.
- ⑪ **Beep/NAVI Guide Connector**  
Output the audio signal of navigation interruption.  
When connecting an Audio processor, connect this lead to the Guide Input terminal with an optional RCA Extension cable.
- ⑫ **HDMI input Connector**  
Input HDMI signal, you should prepare an optional Alpine special HDMI cable.
- ⑬ **USB Connector**  
To USB Memory or iPod/iPhone.
- ⑭ **GPS antenna Receptacle**  
Connect to GPS antenna (included).
- ⑮ **Not used**
- ⑯ **MIC Input Connector**  
To Microphone (Included).
- ⑰ **AUX/PRE OUT Connector**
- ⑱ **Video Input Connector (AUX INPUT) (Yellow)**  
Input the video.
- ⑲ **Audio Input Connectors (AUX INPUT)**  
RED is right and WHITE is left input the audio.
- ⑳ **Video Output Connector (AUX OUTPUT) (Yellow)**  
Output the video.
- ㉑ **Audio Output Connectors (AUX OUTPUT)**  
RED is right and WHITE is left output the audio.
- ㉒ **Front Output RCA Connectors**  
It can be used as Front Output RCA Connectors. RED is right and WHITE is left.
- ㉓ **Rear Output RCA Connectors**  
It can be used as Rear Output RCA Connectors. RED is right and WHITE is left.
- ㉔ **Subwoofer RCA Connectors**  
RED is right and WHITE is left.
- ㉕ **RCA Extension Cable (sold separately)**
- ㉖ **Remote Turn-On Lead (Blue/White)**  
Connect this lead to the remote turn-on lead of your amplifier or signal processor.
- ㉗ **Reverse Lead (Orange/White)**  
Connect to the plus side of the car's reverse lamp. This lamp illuminates when the transmission is shifted into reverse (R).  
With this lead properly wired, the video picture automatically switches to the rear camera whenever the car is put into reverse (R).
- ㉘ **Power Antenna Lead (Blue)**  
Connect this lead to the +B terminal of your power antenna, if applicable.
  - *This lead should be used only for controlling the vehicle's power antenna. Do not use this lead to turn on an amplifier or a signal processor, etc.*
- ㉙ **Parking Brake Lead (Yellow/Blue)**  
Connect this lead to the power supply side of the parking brake switch to transmit the parking brake status signals to the X008AU/X008EU/INE-W957A/INE-W957E.
- ㉚ **Switched Power Lead (Ignition) (Red)**  
Connect this lead to an open terminal on the vehicle's fuse box or another unused power source which provides (+) 12V only when the ignition is turned on or in the accessory position.
- ㉛ **Battery Lead (Yellow)**  
Connect this lead to the positive (+) post of the vehicle's battery.
- ㉜ **Fuse Holder (15A)**
- ㉝ **Ground Lead (Black)**  
Connect this lead to a good chassis ground on the vehicle. Make sure the connection is made to bare metal and is securely fastened using the sheet metal screw provided.
- ㉞ **Left Rear (+) Speaker Output Lead (Green)**
- ㉟ **Left Rear (-) Speaker Output Lead (Green/Black)**
- ㊱ **Left Front (+) Speaker Output Lead (White)**
- ㊲ **Left Front (-) Speaker Output Lead (White/Black)**
- ㊳ **Right Front (-) Speaker Output Lead (Grey/Black)**
- ㊴ **Right Front (+) Speaker Output Lead (Grey)**
- ㊵ **Right Rear (-) Speaker Output Lead (Violet/Black)**
- ㊶ **Right Rear (+) Speaker Output Lead (Violet)**
- ㊷ **CAMERA/W.REMOTE Connector**
- ㊸ **Power Supply Connector**

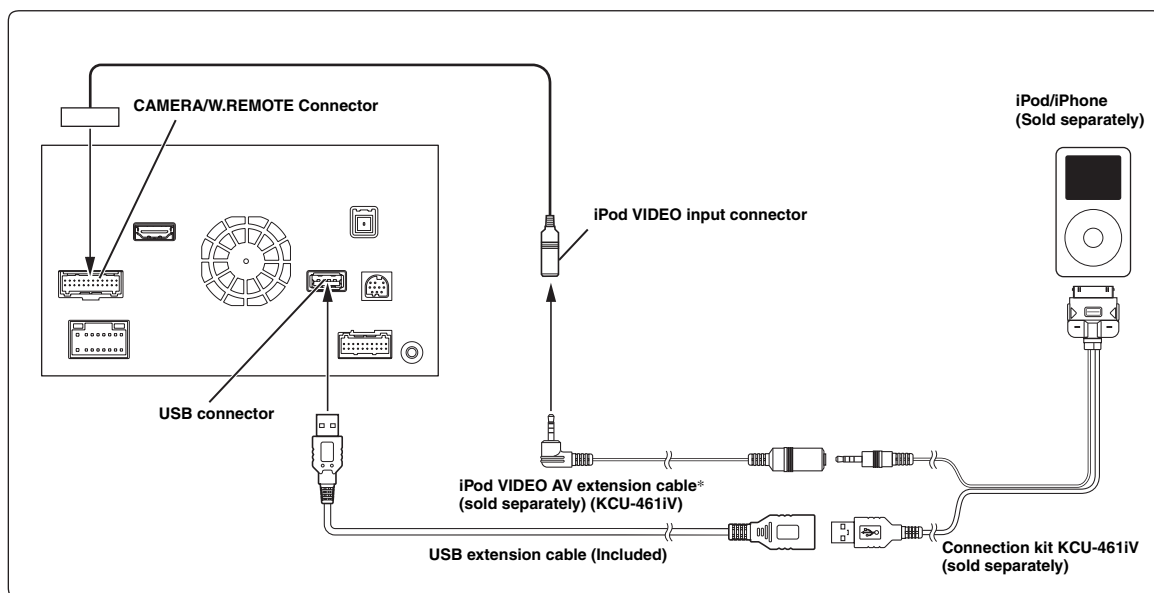
## System Example

### Connection of a USB Memory



- Do not leave USB memory, in a vehicle for a long time. Heat and humidity may damage the USB memory.

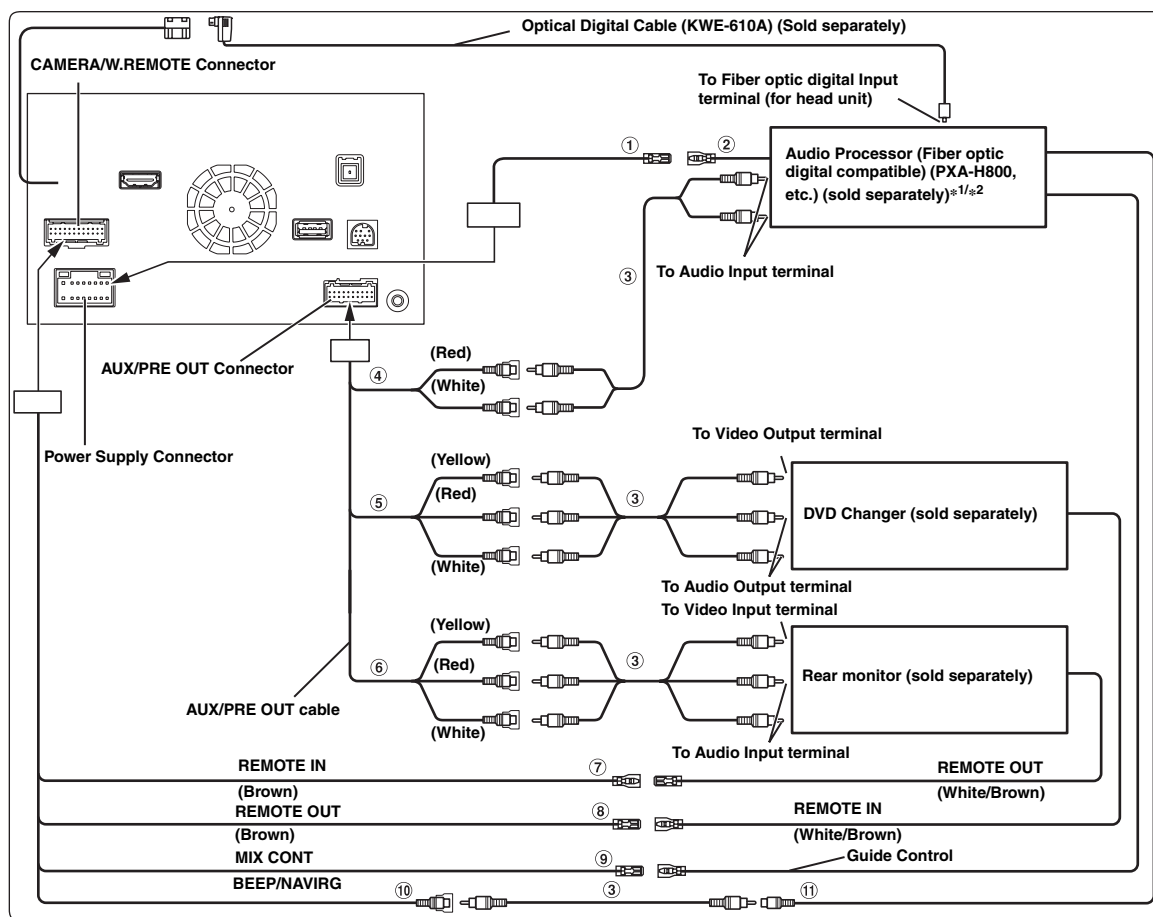
### Connection of an iPod/iPhone



\* If iPod VIDEO is supported, use the iPod VIDEO extension cable.

- To connect an iPod/iPhone, an optional connection kit KCU-461iV is required.
- Do not leave a iPod/iPhone in a vehicle for a long time. Heat and humidity may damage the iPod/iPhone and you may not be able to play it again.

## Connection of an External device



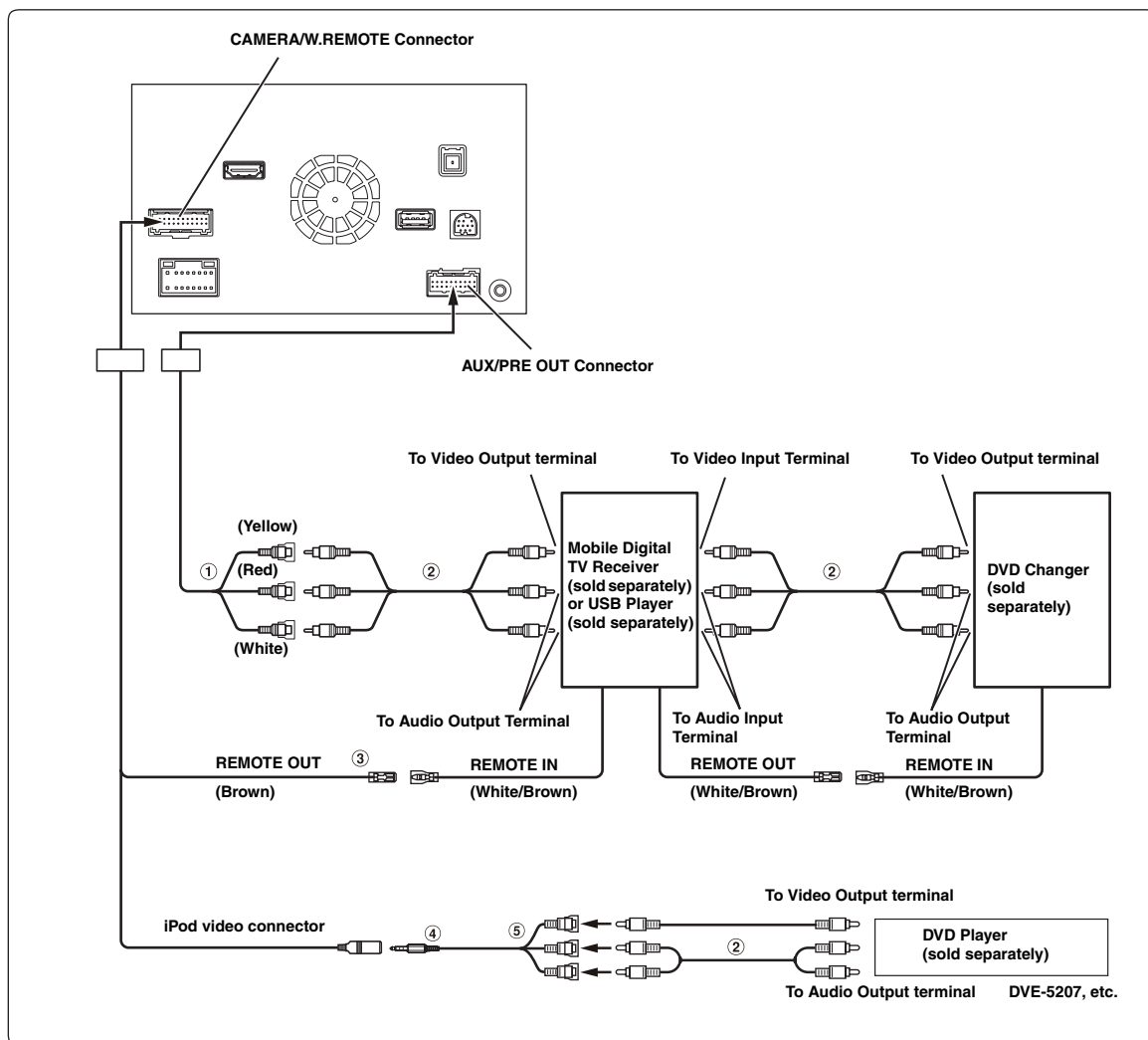
- ① **Remote Turn-On Lead (Blue/White)**  
Connect this lead to the remote turn-on lead of your amplifier or signal processor.
- ② **Remote on Lead**
- ③ **RCA Extension Cable (sold separately)**
- ④ **Front Output RCA Connectors**  
RED is right and WHITE is left.
- ⑤ **Video/Audio Input Connectors (AUX INPUT)**
- ⑥ **Video/Audio Output Connectors (AUX OUTPUT)**  
Used when connecting an optional monitor, etc.
- ⑦ **Remote Control Input Lead (Brown)**  
Connect this lead to the remote control output lead. This lead inputs the controlling signals from the remote control.
- ⑧ **Remote Control Output Lead (Brown)**  
Connect this lead to the remote control input lead. This lead outputs the controlling signals from the remote control.
- ⑨ **MIX Control Lead (Green/White)**  
Use when an optional External Audio Processor with guide control input terminal is connected.
  - When this lead is connected to PXA-H800, make sure to turn the ignition key off (ACC OFF) and on (ACC ON) again or turn the unit power off and on again, after setting "Navi Mix" from OFF to ON on PXA-H800.
- ⑩ **Beep/NAVI Guide Connector**  
Output the audio signal of navigation interruption. When connecting an Audio processor, connect this lead to the Guide Input terminal with an optional RCA Extension cable.
- ⑪ **Navigation audio input connector (RCA input) (NAVI)**  
Used to input the audio output signals of a navigation system.

\*<sup>1</sup> When a fiber optic compatible external audio processor (PXA-H800, etc.) is connected, the External AP and Optical should be set to On. Refer to "Setting the External Audio Processor On/Off" (page 45) and "Setting the Digital Output" (page 45).

\*<sup>2</sup> When a fiber optic compatible external audio processor (PXA-H800, etc.) is connected, the power supply of the built-in amplifier is stopped and an external amplifier should be used to drive speakers. For details, refer to the owner's manual of the compatible external audio processor.

- You can change the name of an external device. Refer to "Setting the AUX Mode" (page 54).

## Connection of a Mobile Digital TV Receiver USB Player (X008AU/INE-W957A only) and DVD Changer



### ① Video/Audio Input Connectors (AUX INPUT)

### ② RCA Extension Cable (sold separately)

### ③ Remote Control Output Lead (Brown)

Connect this lead to the remote control input lead. This lead outputs the controlling signals from the remote control.

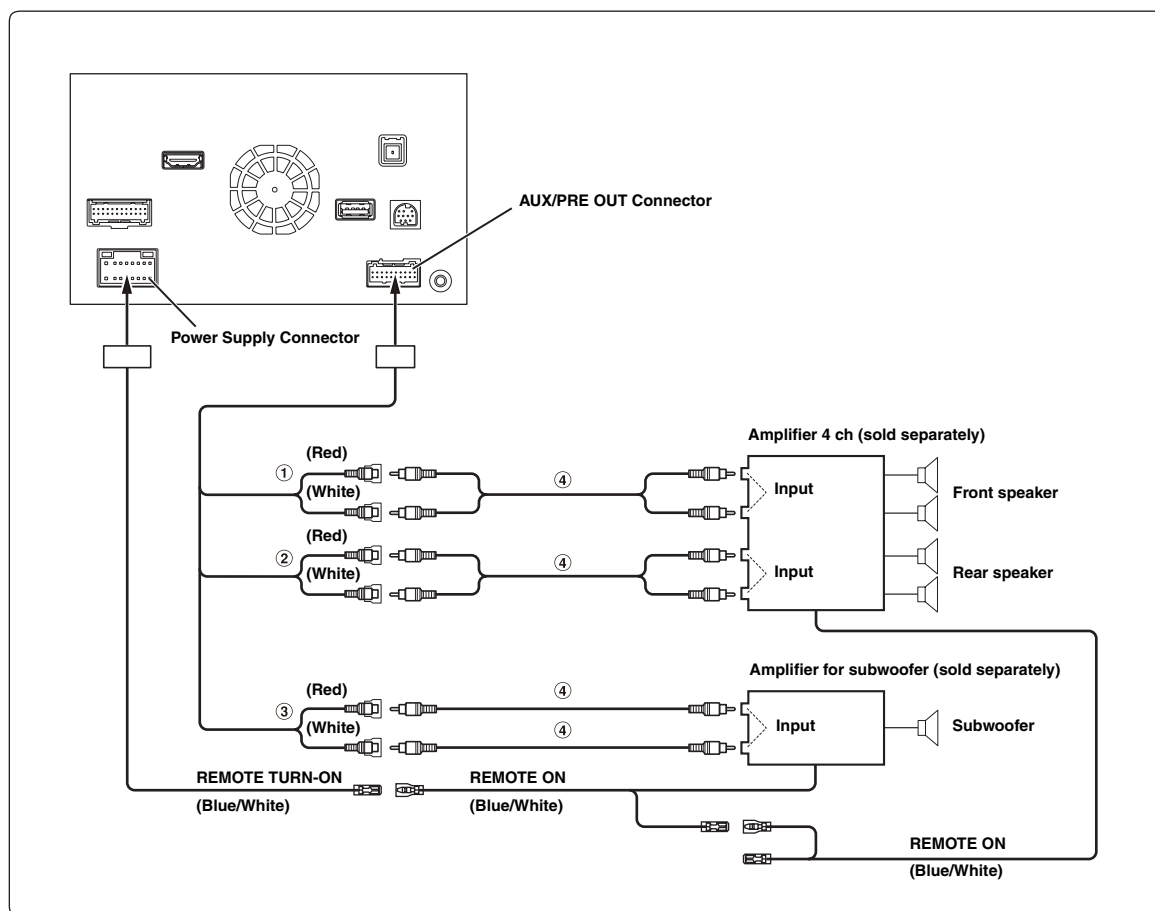
### ④ AV/RCA interface cable (4-pole mini AV plug to 3-RCA) (sold separately)

### ⑤ Video/Audio Input Connectors

YELLOW is for input video, RED is right and WHITE is left input the audio.

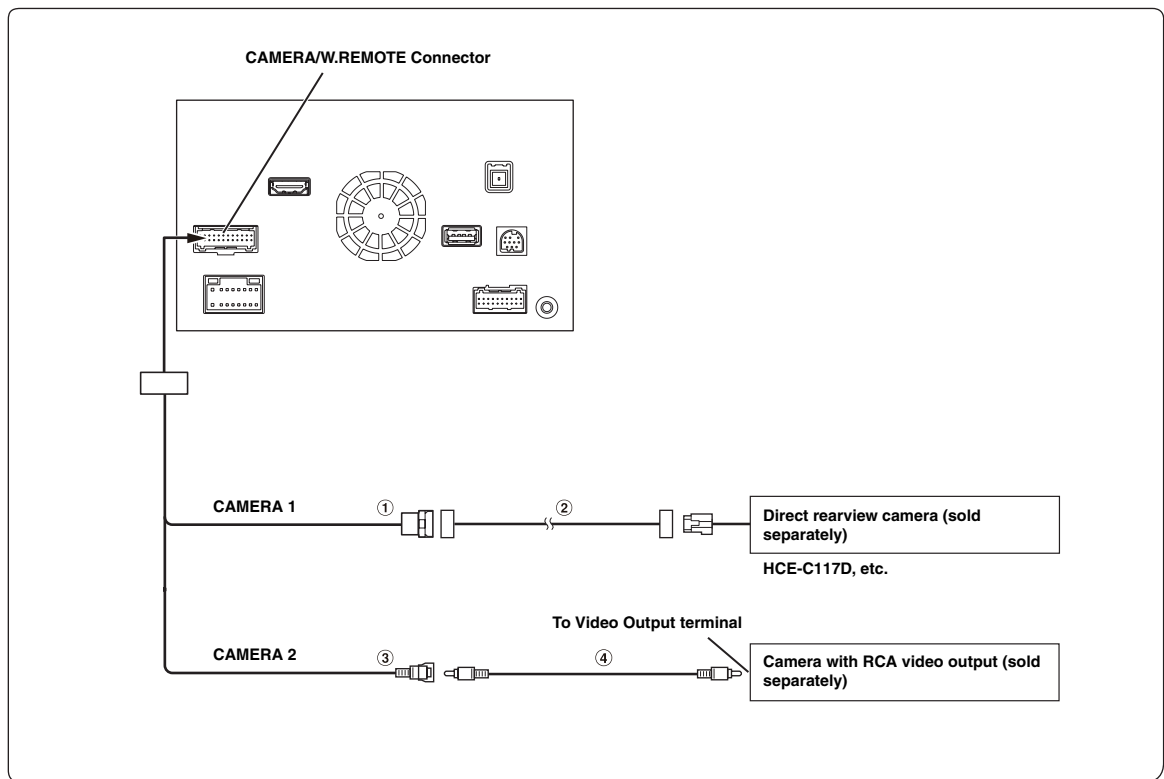
- You can connect one more external input device only when the "Primary Name" is set to "DVB-T" or "USB Player". Refer to "Setting the Primary AUX Name (AUX Setup)" (page 54).
- When connecting an external input device to the iPod VIDEO connector, set "AUX3 In Sel". to "AUX3". Refer to "Setting the AUX3" (page 55).

## Connection of an External Amplifier





## Connection of cameras (Direct camera and AUX camera)



① **Direct CAMERA Input Connector**

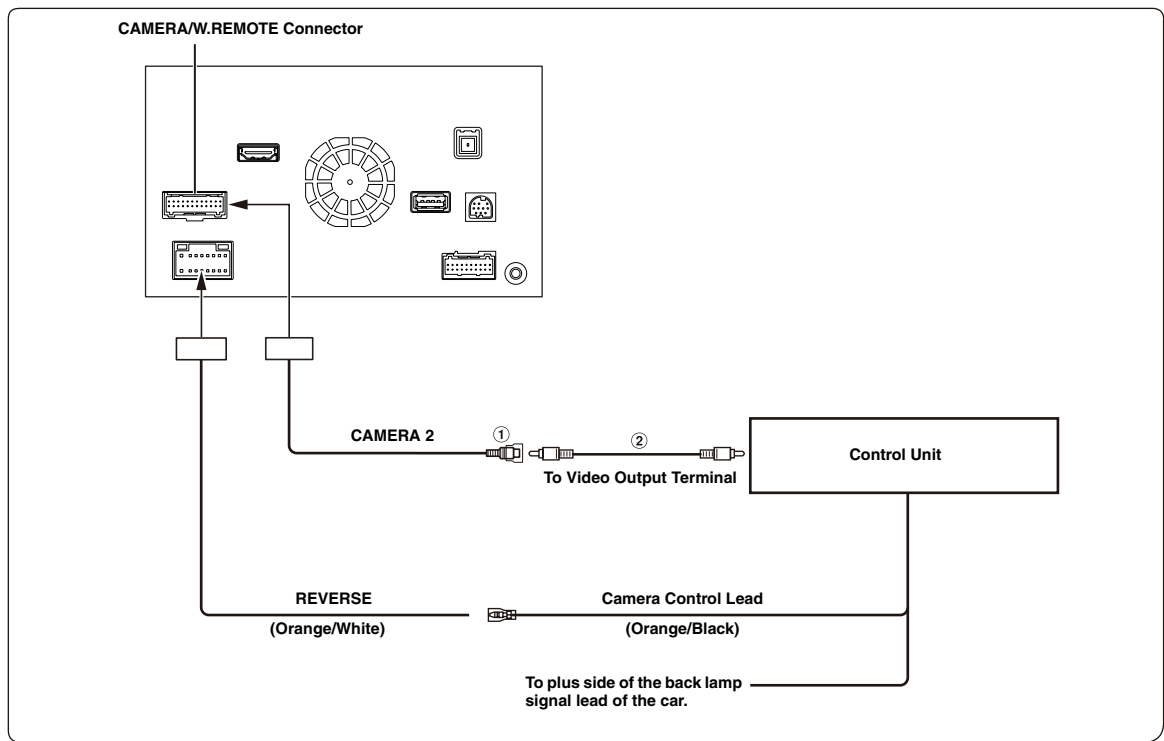
② **Camera extension cable (Included with direct rearview camera)**

③ **CAMERA Input RCA Connector**

- It's better to connect the AUX Camera's power cable to ACC. Otherwise the (AUX) camera's image will not be displayed by touching (AUX) camera button on My Favourite screen. (page 20)

④ **RCA Extension Cable (sold separately)**

## Connection of cameras (HCE-C212F + HCE-C210RD)



- ① CAMERA Input RCA Connector
- ② RCA Extension Cable (sold separately)

- When the screen switches from the front view camera image to the Navigation screen, the location of your vehicle may not be displayed correctly.
- It's better to connect the AUX Camera's power cable to ACC. Otherwise the (AUX) camera's image will not be displayed by touching (AUX) camera button on My Favourite screen.(page 20)

# **User Manual**

## **Alpine Navigation**

Navigation software for the Alpine X008/INE-W957 series

Thank you for choosing the Alpine X008/INE-W957 series as your navigator. Start using your device right away. This document is the detailed description of the navigation software. You can easily discover the software while you are using it; however, we still recommend that you read this manual to fully understand the screens and features.

## Table of contents

<b>1 Warnings and Safety information .....</b>	<b>6</b>
<b>2 Getting started .....</b>	<b>7</b>
2.1 Buttons and other controls on the screen.....	8
2.1.1 Using keyboards .....	9
2.1.2 Beyond single screen tap .....	10
2.2 Map screen.....	11
2.2.1 Navigating on the map .....	11
2.2.2 Position markers .....	13
2.2.2.1 Vehimarker and Lock-on-Road.....	13
2.2.2.2 Selected map location (Cursor) and selected map object .....	13
2.2.3 Objects on the map .....	13
2.2.3.1 Streets and roads .....	13
2.2.3.2 Turn preview and Next street.....	13
2.2.3.3 Lane information and Signposts.....	15
2.2.3.4 Junction view .....	15
2.2.3.5 Motorway exit services .....	15
2.2.3.6 3D object types.....	16
2.2.3.7 Elements of the active route.....	16
2.2.3.8 Traffic events.....	17
2.2.4 Manipulating the map .....	18
2.2.5 Quick menu.....	19
2.2.6 Checking the details of the current position (Where Am I?) .....	21
2.3 Navigation menu .....	23
<b>3 On-road navigation .....</b>	<b>24</b>
3.1 Selecting the destination of a route.....	24
3.1.1 Entering an address or a part of the address.....	24
3.1.1.1 Entering an address .....	25
3.1.1.2 Entering the midpoint of a street as the destination.....	27
3.1.1.3 Selecting an intersection as the destination .....	28
3.1.1.4 Selecting a city/town centre as the destination.....	30
3.1.1.5 Entering an address with a postal code .....	31
3.1.1.6 Tips on entering addresses quickly .....	32
3.1.2 Selecting the destination from the Places of Interest .....	33
3.1.2.1 Quick search for a Place of Interest.....	33
3.1.2.2 Searching for a Place of Interest using preset categories .....	34
3.1.2.3 Searching for a Place of Interest by category.....	37
3.1.2.4 Searching for a Place of Interest by name .....	39
3.1.2.5 Selecting nearby assistance from 'Where Am I?'.....	41

3.1.3 Using the free form search .....	43
3.1.4 Selecting a map location as the destination.....	44
3.1.5 Selecting the destination from your Address Book.....	44
3.1.6 Selecting a recent destination from the History .....	45
3.1.7 Entering the coordinate of the destination .....	46
3.1.8 Navigate to a location stored in a picture.....	47
3.1.9 Building a route from the list of destinations (Create Route) .....	48
3.2 <i>Viewing the entire route on the map</i> .....	49
3.3 <i>Checking route parameters and accessing route related functions</i> .....	49
3.4 <i>Modifying the route</i> .....	50
3.4.1 Selecting a new destination when already having a route: New Route, Waypoint or Final Destination.....	50
3.4.2 Setting a new starting position for the route .....	51
3.4.3 Editing the list of destinations (Edit Route) .....	52
3.4.4 Cancelling the active route.....	53
3.4.5 Checking route alternatives.....	53
3.4.6 Changing the vehicle used in route planning .....	54
3.4.7 Changing the road types used in route planning .....	55
3.5 <i>Saving a location as an Address Book entry</i> .....	56
3.6 <i>Saving a location as an alert point</i> .....	57
3.7 <i>Editing an alert point</i> .....	58
3.8 <i>Watching the simulation of the route</i> .....	59
<b>4 Off-road navigation.....</b>	<b>61</b>
4.1 <i>Selecting the destination of the route</i> .....	61
4.2 <i>Navigating in off-road mode</i> .....	61
<b>5 Reference Guide .....</b>	<b>62</b>
5.1 <i>Concepts</i> .....	62
5.1.1 Smart Zoom .....	62
5.1.2 Route calculation and recalculation .....	62
5.1.3 Green routing.....	64
5.1.4 Speed limit warning .....	64
5.1.5 Traffic information in route planning .....	65
5.1.5.1 <i>Historical traffic</i> .....	65
5.1.5.2 <i>Real-time traffic information (TMC)</i> .....	65
5.2 <i>Information menu</i> .....	66
5.3 <i>Settings menu</i> .....	68
5.3.1 Sound and Warnings.....	70
5.3.2 Customise Quick menu .....	72

5.3.3 Traffic settings .....	72
5.3.4 Route settings.....	72
5.3.5 Map settings.....	75
5.3.6 Visual guidance settings .....	77
5.3.7 Regional settings.....	78
5.3.8 Trip monitor settings.....	79
5.4 <i>Trip monitor</i> .....	79
<b>6 Glossary.....</b>	<b>80</b>
<b>7 Copyright note.....</b>	<b>82</b>

## **1 Warnings and Safety information**

The navigation system helps you find your way to your destination with a connected GPS receiver. The software does not transmit your GPS position; others cannot track you.

It is important that you look at the display only when it is safe to do so. If you are the driver of the vehicle, we recommend that you operate your software before you start your journey. Plan the route before your departure and stop if you need to change the route.

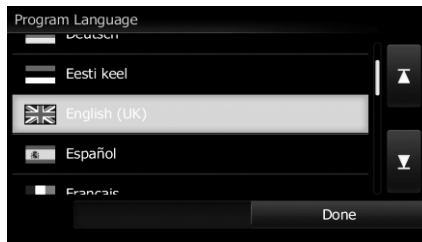
You must obey the traffic signs and follow the road geometry. If you deviate from the recommended route, your software changes the instructions accordingly.



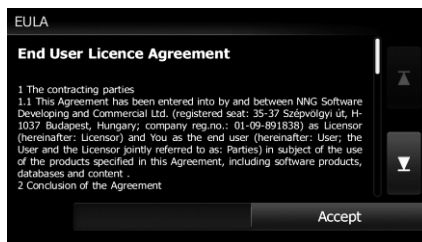
## 2 Getting started


When using the navigation software for the first time, an initial setup process starts automatically. Do as follows:

1. Select the written language of the application interface. Later you can change it in Regional settings (page 78).

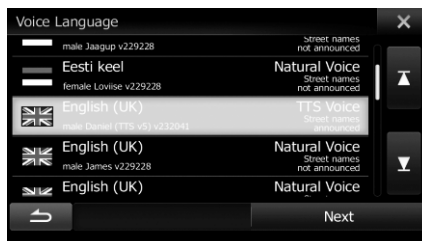


2. Read the End User Licence Agreement. Tap  to continue.

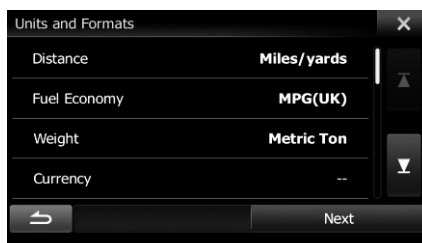


3. The Configuration wizard starts. Tap  to continue.

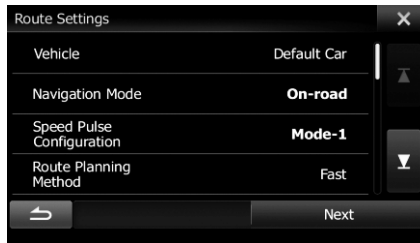
4. Select the language and speaker used for voice guidance messages. Later you can change it in Sound and Warnings settings (page 78).



5. If needed, modify the time format and unit settings. Later you can change them in Regional settings (page 78).



6. If needed, modify the default route planning options. Later you can change them in Route settings (page 72).









7. The initial setup is now complete. The Configuration wizard can be restarted later from the Settings menu (page 68).





After the initial setup, the Map screen appears and you can start using the software.

## 2.1 Buttons and other controls on the screen

When you are using the software, you usually tap buttons on the touch screen.




You only need to confirm selections or changes if the application needs to restart, it needs to perform a major reconfiguration, or you are about to lose some of your data or settings. Otherwise, the software saves your selections and applies the new settings without confirmation as soon as you use the controls.




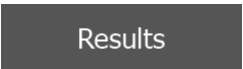
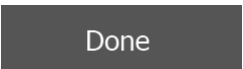

Type	Example	Description	How to use it
Button		Tap it to initiate a function, to open a new screen, or to set a parameter.	Tap it once.
Button with value		Some buttons display the current value of a field or setting. Tap the button to change the value. After the change, the new value is shown on the button.	Tap it once.
Icon		Shows status information.	Some icons also function as a button. Tap them once.
List		When you need to select from several options, they appear in a list.	Grab the list anywhere and slide your finger up or down. Depending on the speed of the sliding, the list will scroll fast or slow, only a bit or till the end.  Alternatively, move between pages with the  and  buttons and tap the value that you want.

Radio button		When there are only a few choices, radio buttons may be used instead of lists. Only one value can be selected.	Tap one of the buttons to select a new value.
Switch		When there are only two choices, a checkmark shows whether the feature is enabled.	Tap it to turn the switch on or off.
Slider		When a feature can be set to different values in a range, the software shows an indicator on a gauge that displays and sets the value.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Drag the handle to move the slider to its new position.</li> <li>• Tap the slider where you want the handle to appear; the thumb jumps there.</li> </ul>
Virtual keyboard		Alphabetic and alphanumeric keyboards to enter text and numbers.	Each key is a touch screen button.

### 2.1.1 Using keyboards










You only need to enter letters or numbers when you cannot avoid it. You can type with your fingertips on the full-screen keyboards and you can switch between various keyboard layouts, for example English, Greek or numerical.

Task	Instruction
Switching to another keyboard layout, for example from an English keyboard to a Greek keyboard	Tap the  button and select the new keyboard layout from the list.
Correcting your entry on the keyboard	Tap  to remove the unneeded character(s). Tap and hold the button to delete several characters or the entire input string.
Entering a space, for example between a first name and a family name or in multi-word street names	Tap the  button at the bottom centre of the screen.

Entering upper and lower case letters	When entering a text, the first character appears in upper case while the rest of the text is in lower case. Tap  to enter an upper case letter or tap twice to turn on Caps Lock. Tap again and lower case letters return.
Entering symbols	Tap  to switch to a keyboard offering numeric and symbol characters.
Finalising the keyboard entry (accepting the suggested search result)	Tap  .
Finalising the keyboard entry (opening the list of search results)	Tap  .
Finalising the keyboard entry (saving your input)	Tap  .
Cancelling the keyboard entry (returning to the previous screen)	Tap  .

### 2.1.2 Beyond single screen tap

You usually need to tap the screen only once. However, some useful features can be accessed with combined touch screen tapping. Those are the following:

Action	Details
Tapping and holding the screen	<p>Tap and keep pressing the following buttons to reach extra functions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Tap and hold any of the , , , , , and  buttons on the Map screen: you can rotate, tilt or scale the map continuously.</li> <li>Tap and hold  on keyboard screens: you can delete several characters quickly.</li> <li>Tap and hold  or  in long lists: you can scroll pages continuously.</li> </ul>


Gestures (drag&drop)	<p>You need to drag and drop the screen only in cases like:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Moving the handle on a slider.</li> <li>• Scrolling the list: grab the list anywhere and slide your finger up or down. Depending on the speed of the sliding, the list will scroll fast or slow, only a bit or till the end.</li> <li>• Moving the map in map browsing mode: grab the map, and move it in the desired direction.</li> </ul>
-------------------------	--

## 2.2 Map screen

### 2.2.1 Navigating on the map

The Map screen is the most frequently used screen of the software.

It shows the current position (the Vehimarker, a blue arrow by default), the recommended route (an orange line), and the surrounding map area.

The application starts with a full screen map. Tap  to reduce the map size to half and allow information from your Alpine X008/INE-W957 series audio system to appear on the other half. You can decide which side of the map is the navigation. Simply tap the audio part and drag it to the other side of the screen.

When there is no GPS position, the Vehimarker is transparent. It shows your last known position.

You see coloured dots circling around a satellite symbol in the top left corner. The more green dots you see, the closer you are to get the valid GPS position.



When GPS position is available, the Vehimarker is displayed in full colour, now showing your current position.



There are screen buttons and data fields on the screen to help you navigate. During navigation, the screen shows route information.

Two data fields are displayed on the left.



The data fields are different when you are navigating an active route and when you have no specified destination (the orange line is not displayed).




Default data fields when cruising without a destination (tap any of the fields to change its value):

Field	Description
Speed <b>61 km/h</b>	Shows your current speed given by the GPS receiver.
Speed Limit <b>70 km/h</b>	Shows the speed limit of the current road if the map contains it.

Default data fields when navigating a route (tap any of the fields to change its value):

Field	Description
Distance <b>16.9 km</b>	Shows the distance you need to travel on the route before reaching your final destination.
Time Left <b>0:16</b>	Shows the time needed to reach the final destination of the route based on information available for the remaining segments of the route.  If your device is capable of receiving live traffic information, the calculation takes into account traffic delays affecting your route if they are received. However, this calculation is rarely accurate.  Historical traffic data can also be taken into account if data is available.

There are three map view modes. Tap the button below the data fields to change the view:

- 
 : 3D perspective view rotated in your direction of travel.
- 
 : 2D top-down view facing North.
- 
 : 2D top-down view rotated in your direction of travel.

## 2.2.2 Position markers

### 2.2.2.1 Vehimarker and Lock-on-Road

When your GPS position is available, the software marks your current position with the Vehimarker. By default, this marker is a blue arrow, but you can change this icon in Settings.

When on-road navigation is selected, the Vehimarker may not show your exact GPS position and heading. If roads are near, it is aligned to the nearest road to suppress GPS position errors, and the direction of the icon is aligned to the direction of the road.

If you select off-road navigation: The Vehimarker is at your exact GPS position. The direction of the icon shows your current heading.

### 2.2.2.2 Selected map location (Cursor) and selected map object

You can mark a map location in the following ways:

- Tap the map when navigating,
- Tap the map when you are asked to confirm the destination at the end of a search, or
- Tap the map in Find on Map (page 44)

When a map location is selected, the Cursor appears at the selected point on the map. The



Cursor is displayed with a radiating red dot ( ) to make it visible at all zoom levels.

The location of the Cursor can be used as the destination of the route, a new alert point, you can search for Places around it, or you can save this location as one of your Favourite destinations.

You can also select some of the objects on the map. If you tap the map at the icon of a Place of Interest or an alert point, the object will be selected (you see a red circling border around the object), and you can get information about this object or use it as a route point.

## 2.2.3 Objects on the map

### 2.2.3.1 Streets and roads

The software shows the streets in a way that is similar to how the paper road maps show them. Their width and colours correspond to their importance: you can easily tell a motorway from a small street.















### 2.2.3.2 Turn preview and Next street

When navigating a route, the top section of the Map screen shows information about the next route event (manoeuvre) and the next street or the next city/town.



There is a field in the top left corner that displays the next manoeuvre. Both the type of the event (turn, roundabout, exiting motorway, etc.) and its distance from the current position are displayed.

Most of these icons are very intuitive. The following table lists some of the frequently shown route events.

Icon	Description
	Turn left.
	Turn right.
	Turn back.
	Bear right.
	Turn sharp left.
	Keep left.
	Continue straight in the intersection.
	Go left on the roundabout, 3rd exit.
	Enter motorway.
	Exit motorway.
	Board ferry.
	Leave ferry.
	Approaching a waypoint.
	Approaching the destination.

These fields also act as buttons:



- Tap the Turn preview field and the voice guidance will repeat the latest instruction with updated distance information.
- Tap the Next street field to open the Itinerary.

### 2.2.3.3 Lane information and Signposts

When navigating on multilane roads, it is important to take the appropriate lane in order to follow the recommended route. If lane information is available in the map data, the software displays the lanes and their directions using small arrows at the top of the map. Highlighted arrows represent the lanes you need to take.

Where additional information is available, signposts substitute arrows. Signposts are displayed at the top of the map. The colour and style of the signposts are similar to the real ones you can see above road or by the roadside. They show the available destinations and the number of the road the lane leads to.

All signposts look similar when cruising (when there is no recommended route). When navigating a route, only the signpost that points to the lane(s) to be taken is displayed in vivid colours; all others are darker.

If you want to hide the currently displayed signposts, tap any of them and the normal Map screen returns until new signpost information is received.

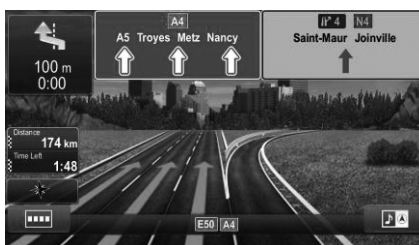


This feature can be turned off in Visual Guidance settings.

### 2.2.3.4 Junction view

If you are approaching a motorway exit or a complex intersection and the needed information exists, the map is replaced with a 3D view of the junction. The lanes you need to take are displayed with arrows. Signposts can also be present if information is available.

If you want to hide the currently displayed junction, tap the picture and the Map screen returns.



This feature can be turned off in Visual Guidance settings.

### 2.2.3.5 Motorway exit services

You may need a petrol station or a restaurant during your journey. This feature displays a new button on the map when you are driving on motorways.



Tap this button to open a panel with the details of the next few exits or service stations.



Tap any of them to display it on the map and add it as a waypoint to your route if needed.

If you want to display other types of Places for the exits, you can change the icons in Visual Guidance settings (page 77).

### 2.2.3.6 3D object types




Your software supports the following 3D object types:

Type	Description
3D terrain	3D terrain map data shows changes in terrain, elevations or depressions in the land when you view the map in 2D, and use it to plot the route map in 3D when you navigate. Hills and mountains are shown in the background of the 3D map, and illustrated by colour and shading on the 2D map.
Elevated roads	Complex intersections and vertically isolated roads (such as overpasses or bridges) are displayed in 3D.
3D landmarks	Landmarks are 3D artistic or block representations of prominent or well-known objects.
3D buildings	3D block representation of full city building data containing actual building size and position on the map.

### 2.2.3.7 Elements of the active route

Your software shows the route in the following way:


Symbol	Name	Description
--------	------	-------------

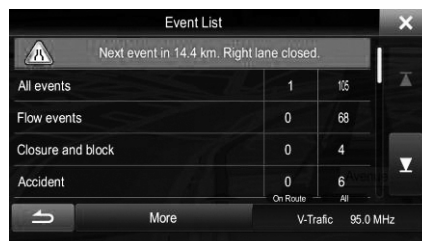
	Current GPS position and Start point	Your current position displayed on the map. If roads are near, it is aligned to the nearest road.  Normally if GPS position is available, the route starts from the current position. If there is no valid GPS position, your software uses the last known position as the start point.
	Waypoint (intermediate destination)	An intermediate destination of the route before reaching the final destination.
	Destination (end point)	The final destination of the route.
	Route colour	The route always stands out with its colour on the map, both in daytime and in night colour mode.
	Streets and roads that are excluded from the navigation	You can choose whether you want to use or avoid certain road types (page 72). However, when your software cannot avoid such roads, the route will include them and it will show them in a colour that is different from the route colour.
	Streets and roads that are affected by traffic events	Road segments may be affected by traffic events received. These streets and roads are displayed in an alternate colour, and small symbols displayed along the route show the type of the traffic event.

### 2.2.3.8 Traffic events

Road segments affected by traffic events are displayed with an alternate colour on the map, and small symbols above the road show the nature of the event:



Tap  to open the list of traffic event categories:

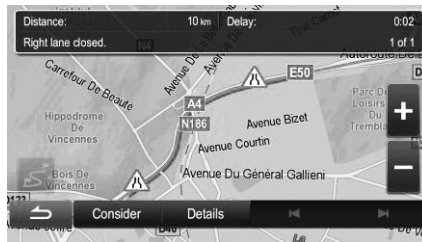


In the first column you can see the number of traffic events on your route. The second column contains the full count of traffic events in the categories.

Tap any of the even types to list the event in that category or select the top row to open the list of all traffic events:





Now tap any of the list items to see its details, and to display the affected road segment in its full length on the map:


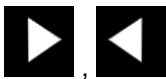







## 2.2.4 Manipulating the map


Tap the map anywhere to browse it during navigation. The map stops following the current position (the Vehimarker, a blue arrow by default, is not locked in a fix position on the screen any more) and control buttons appear to help you modify the map view.

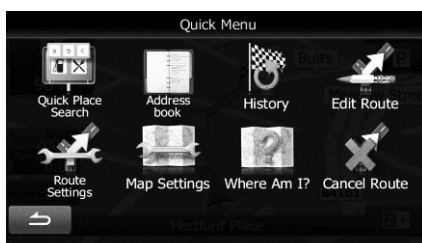



Action	Button(s)	Description
Moving the map with drag&drop	No buttons	You can move the map in any direction: tap and hold the map, and move your finger towards the direction you want to move the map.
Zooming in and out	 , 	<p>Changes how much of the map is displayed on the screen.</p> <p>Your software uses high-quality vector maps that let you examine the map at various zoom levels, always with optimised content. It always displays street names and other text with the same font size, never upside-down, and you only see the streets and objects that you need.</p> <p>Map scaling has a limit in 3D map view mode. If you zoom out further, the map switches to 2D view mode.</p> <p>Tap the button once to modify the view in large steps, or tap and hold the button to modify it continuously and smoothly.</p>

Tilting up and down		Changes the vertical view angle of the map in 3D mode.  Tap the button once to modify the view in large steps, or tap and hold the button to modify it continuously and smoothly.
Rotating left and right		Changes the horizontal view angle of the map.  Tap the button once to modify the view in large steps, or tap and hold the button to modify it continuously and smoothly.
Compass		Tap this button to cycle between a 3D perspective and two 2D top-down map view modes.
Location information		Tap this button to open a new screen with information about the selected map point, the Cursor.
Return to normal navigation		Tap this button to move the map back to follow the current GPS position. Automatic map rotation is also re-enabled.  The map manipulation buttons disappear and navigation continues.
Additional options		Tap this button to open a list of additional features like saving the Cursor as an Address Book entry, or searching for Places around the Cursor.
Select destination		Tap this button to select the Cursor as a new destination.

### 2.2.5 Quick menu





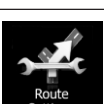




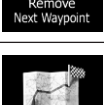

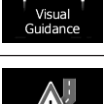
The Quick menu is a selection of controls and functions that are frequently needed during navigation. It can be opened directly from the Map screen by tapping .




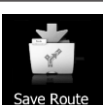
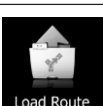
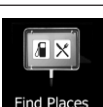
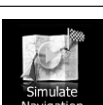
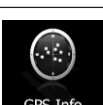
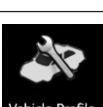


The menu will close after a few seconds of inactivity or if you tap .

Most of these functions are shortcuts. They are accessible from the menu system.

There are more functions available than the number of buttons in the menu. In Settings, you can choose the function of each button (page 72). The following options are available:

Button	Description
	This function lets you search for a Place along your route or around your current location if there is no route calculated.
	This button opens the Address Book.
	This button opens the History list. You can select one of your previous destinations.
	This button opens the route editing function.
	This button opens the route related settings.
	This button opens the map related settings.
	This button opens a special screen with information about the current position and a button to search for nearby emergency or roadside assistance. For details, see the next chapter.
	This button cancels the route and stops navigation. The button is replaced with the next one if waypoints are given.
	This button skips the next waypoint from the route.
	This button opens a 2D map scaled and positioned to show the entire route.
	This button opens the Visual Guidance settings screen.
	This button opens the list of traffic event types.

 Avoid	This button lets you bypass parts of the recommended route.
 Trip Monitor	This button opens the Trip Monitor screen where you can manage your previously saved trip logs and track logs.
 Itinerary	This button opens the list of manoeuvres (the itinerary).
 Save Route	With this function you can save the active route for later use.
 Load Route	With this function you can replace the active route with a previously saved route.
 Find Places	With this function you can search for Places of Interest in various different ways.
 Simulate Navigation	This button opens the Map screen and starts simulating the active route.
 GPS Info	This button opens the GPS Information screen with satellite position and signal strength information.
 Vehicle Profile	This button opens the parameters of the selected Vehicle profile.

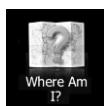
### 2.2.6 Checking the details of the current position (Where Am I?)

This screen contains information about the current position (or about the last known position if GPS reception is not available) and a button to search for useful Places nearby.

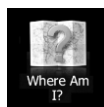
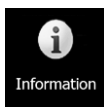


You can access this screen from the map in one of the following ways:

- If the current street is displayed below the Vehimarker (the current position on the map), tap it to open the Where Am I? screen.



- Open the Quick menu and tap the button.

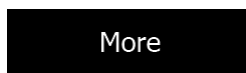


- In the Navigation menu, tap Information and then .

Information on this screen:

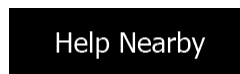
- : Latitude and Longitude (coordinate of the current position in WGS84 format).
- : Altitude (elevation information coming from the GPS receiver - often inaccurate).
- Address details (when available) of the current position are also displayed at the bottom.

You can also perform some actions on this screen:



Tap to save the current position as an Address Book entry or to read the Country Information.

You can also search for assistance near your current position. Tap to open a new screen for the Quick search:



The following services can be searched around the current position or the last known position:

- : Car repair and roadside assistance services
- : Medical and emergency services
- : Police stations
- : Petrol stations

Tap any of the buttons, select a Place from the list, and navigate to it.







## 2.3 Navigation menu

You can reach all parts of the software from the Navigation menu. When you open the menu, the destination search buttons appear on the screen. Tap any other menu button at the top and their feature buttons appear below.



You have the following menus:

- Tap  to select your destination by entering an address or selecting a place of interest, a location on the map or one of your Address Book entries. You can also look up your recent destinations from the History, enter a coordinate or use the location saved in a photo. You can also use the free form search.
- Tap  to display the route parameters and the route in its full length on the map. You can also perform route-related actions such as editing or cancelling your route, setting a start point for the route, picking route alternatives, avoiding parts of the route or simulating navigation.
- Tap  to get information about your current position, the GPS reception or the trips you have taken or to run some additional applications..
- Tap  to customise the way the navigation software works.
- Press the MAP hardware button to start navigating on the map.

## 3 On-road navigation

When first started, Alpine X008/INE-W957 series calculates routes using the road network of the high quality vector maps provided with the product.

You can set up your route in different ways:

- If you need a route for immediate navigation, you can select the destination and start navigating to it right away (normal navigation).
- You can also plan a route independently of your current GPS position or even without GPS reception (to achieve this, you need to turn off the GPS receiver and set a new starting point in Route / Edit Route by tapping the flag icon at the current position).

You can plan routes with multiple destinations. Select the first destination. Then select a second destination and add it to your route to create a multi-point route. You can add as many destinations to your route as you like.

You can also use Alpine X008/INE-W957 series for off-road navigation. For details, see page 61.

### 3.1 Selecting the destination of a route

The software offers you several ways of choosing your destination:

- Enter a full address or a part of an address, for example a street name without a house number or the names of two intersecting streets (page 24).
- Enter an address with postal code (page 31). This way you do not need to select the name of the city/town and the search for street names might be faster as well.
- Use a built-in Place of Interest as your destination (page 33).
- Use the free form search to find an address or Place (page 43).
- Select a location on the map with the Find on Map feature (page 44).
- Use a previously saved Address Book entry (page 44).
- Select a location from the History of previously used destinations (page 45).
- Enter the coordinate of the destination (page 46).
- Use the location where a photo was taken (page 47).

#### 3.1.1 Entering an address or a part of the address

If you know at least a part of the address, it is the quickest way to select the destination of the route.

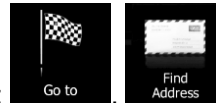
Using the same screen, you can find an address by entering:

- the exact address, including house number
- the centre of a city/town
- an intersection
- the midpoint of a street
- any of the above, starting the search with the postal code (page 31)

You can also search for an address with the free form search (page 43).

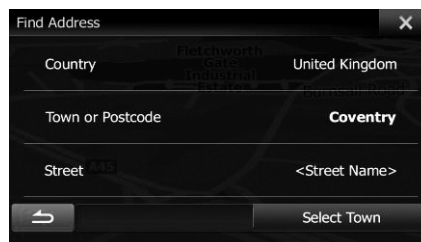
### 3.1.1.1 Entering an address

To enter an address as the destination, do as follows:



1. In the Navigation menu, tap the following buttons:
2. By default, the software proposes the country and city/town where you are. If needed,


tap **Country**, enter the first few letters of the country name on the keyboard, and select one country from the list of results.



3. If needed, select a new city/town:

- a. Tap

**Town**

- b. Start entering the name of the city/town on the keyboard.
- c. Find the city/town you need:
  - The most likely city/town name is always shown in the input field. To accept it, tap .
  - If the desired name does not show up, the names that match the string appear in a list after entering a couple of characters (to open the list of results before it appears automatically, tap **Results**). Select the city/town from the list.




1. Enter the street name:

- a. Tap

**Street**

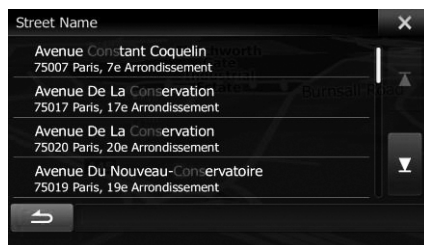
- b. Start entering the street name on the keyboard.
- c. Find the street you need:
  - The most likely street name is always shown in the input field. To

accept it, tap .

- If the desired name does not show up, the names that match the string appear in a list after entering a couple of characters (to open the list of results before it appears automatically, tap

Results

). Select the street from the list.



4. Enter the house number:

- a. Enter the house number on the keyboard. (To enter symbols, tap

QWE

- b. Tap

Done

to finish entering the address. (If the entered house number cannot be found, the midpoint of the street is selected as the destination.)



5. After a short summary of the route parameters, the map appears showing the entire

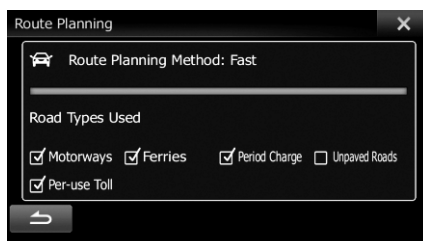
route. The route is automatically calculated. Tap

More

parameters, or tap

Go!

and start your journey.





Tip!

If you know that you will use this destination frequently, before tapping

Next

to confirm the destination, put it in the Address Book first:

More

tap then



Add to Favourites

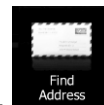
, give a name for the new

Done

entry, and tap to save the location. The map with the destination returns automatically. Now you can start your journey.

### 3.1.1.2 Entering the midpoint of a street as the destination

You can navigate to the midpoint of a street if the house number is not available:



1. In the Navigation menu, tap the following buttons:
2. If necessary, modify the country and city/town as described earlier (page 25).
3. Enter the street name:

Street

- a. Tap (if you have selected a city/town above, this step is not needed).
- b. Start entering the street name on the keyboard.
- c. Find the street you need:

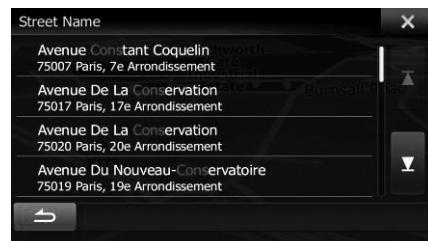
- The most likely street name is always shown in the input field. To accept



it, tap

- If the desired name does not show up, the names that match the string appear in a list after entering a couple of characters (to open the list of

results before it appears automatically, tap Results). Select the street from the list.



4. Instead of entering the house number, tap the input field above. The midpoint of the street is selected as the destination.






5. After a short summary of the route parameters, the map appears showing the entire route. The route is automatically calculated. Tap **More** to modify route parameters, or tap **Go!** and start your journey.

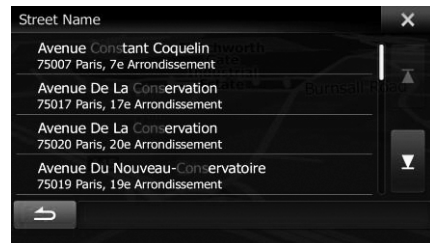


### 3.1.1.3 Selecting an intersection as the destination

To enter an address as the destination, do as follows:

1. In the Navigation menu, tap the following buttons:  .
2. If necessary, modify the country and city/town as described earlier (page 25).
3. Enter the street name:

- a. Tap **Street** (if you have selected a city/town above, this step is not needed).
- b. Start entering the street name on the keyboard.
- c. Find the street you need:
  - The most likely street name is always shown in the input field. To accept it, tap .
  - If the desired name does not show up, the names that match the string appear in a list after entering a couple of characters (to open the list of results before it appears automatically, tap **Results**). Select the street from the list.

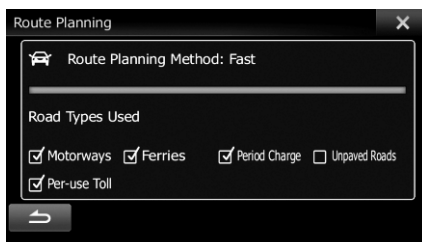


Intersection

4. Instead of entering the house number, tap **Intersection**. The midpoint of the street is selected as the destination.

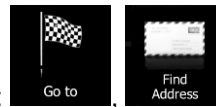


5. After a short summary of the route parameters, the map appears showing the entire route. The route is automatically calculated. Tap **More** to modify route parameters, or tap **Go!** and start your journey.



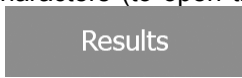


### 3.1.1.4 Selecting a city/town centre as the destination


The city/town centre is not the geometric centre of the city/town but an arbitrary point the map creators have chosen. In towns and villages, it is usually the most important intersection; in larger cities, it is one of the important intersections.

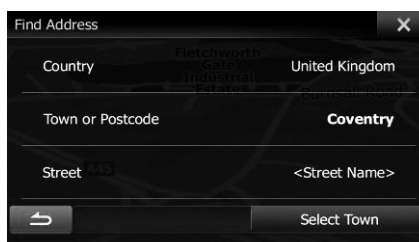




1. In the Navigation menu, tap the following buttons:
2. If necessary, modify the country as described earlier (page 25).
3. Select the destination city/town:

- a. Tap .
- b. Start entering the name of the city/town on the keyboard.
- c. Find the city/town you need:
  - The most likely city/town name is always shown in the input field. To accept it, tap .
  - If the desired name does not show up, the names that match the string appear in a list after entering a couple of characters (to open the list of results before it appears automatically, tap ). Select the city/town from the list.

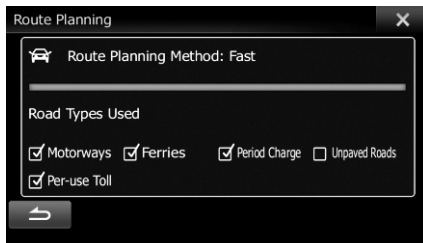


4. Instead of entering the street name, tap . This way the centre of the displayed city/town becomes the destination of the route.



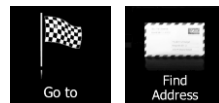
5. After a short summary of the route parameters, the map appears showing the entire route. The route is automatically calculated. Tap  to modify route parameters, or tap  and start your journey.





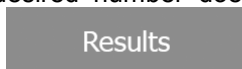


### 3.1.1.5 Entering an address with a postal code



All of the above address searching possibilities can be performed with entering the postal code instead of the city/town name. Find below an example with a full address:



1. In the Navigation menu, tap the following buttons:
2. If necessary, modify the country as described earlier (page 25).
3. Enter a new city/town using its postal code:

- a. Tap .
- b. Start entering the postal code.
- c. Find the city/town you need:
  - The most likely postal code is always shown in the input field. To accept it, tap .
  - If the desired number does not show up, open the list of results by tapping . Select the postal code from the list.



4. Enter the street name:
  - a. Tap .
  - b. Start entering the street name on the keyboard.
  - c. Find the street you need:
    - The most likely street name is always shown in the input field. To accept it, tap .
    - If the desired name does not show up, the names that match the string appear in a list after entering a couple of characters (to open the list of

results before it appears automatically, tap **Results**). Select the street from the list.



5. Enter the house number:


- Enter the house number on the keyboard. (To enter symbols, tap **QWE**).
- Tap **Done** to finish entering the address. (If the entered house number cannot be found, the midpoint of the street is selected as the destination.)




6. After a short summary of the route parameters, the map appears showing the entire route. The route is automatically calculated. Tap **More** to modify route parameters, or tap **Go!** and start your journey.



### 3.1.1.6 Tips on entering addresses quickly

- When you are entering the name of a city/town or a street:
  - Only those letters are offered on the keyboard that appear in possible search results. All other characters are greyed out.
  - As you are typing, the most likely result is always displayed in the input field. If the guess is correct, tap  to select it.

- After entering a couple of letters, tap  to list the items that contain the specified letters.
- You can speed up finding an intersection:
  - Search first for the street with a less common or less usual name; fewer letters are enough to find it.
  - If one of the streets is shorter, search for that one first. You can then find the second one faster.
- You can search for both the type and the name of a road. If the same word appears in several names, for example in the name of streets, roads and avenues, you can obtain the result faster if you enter the first letter of the street type: For example, enter 'PI A' to obtain Pine Avenue and skip all Pine Streets and Pickwick Roads.
- You can also search in postal codes. As postal codes consist of only a few characters, this is usually faster than entering the name of the city/town.

### 3.1.2 Selecting the destination from the Places of Interest

You can select your destination from the Places of Interest included with your software.

Using the same screen, you can find a Place in different ways:

- with the Quick search feature, you can quickly find a nearby Place by its name
- with the Preset search feature, you can find frequently searched types of Places with only a few screen taps
- you can search for a Place by its category
- you can search for a Place by its name

In addition, you can search for special services from the 'Where Am I?' screen.

You can also search for a Place with the free form search (page 43).

#### 3.1.2.1 Quick search for a Place of Interest

The Quick search feature lets you quickly find a Place by its name. The search is always carried out

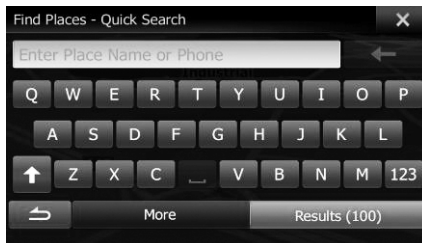
- along the recommended route if it exists or
- around your current location if there is no destination given.

1. Start the Quick search function:

- If you are on the Map screen, tap  and then tap .

- If you are in the Navigation menu, tap ,  and then tap .

2. Using the keyboard, start entering the name of the Place.



Results

- After entering a few letters, tap **Results** to open the list of Places with names containing the entered character sequence.



- (optional) The Places in the list are ordered by the length of the necessary detour (when navigating a route) or by their distance from the current position (when no

More

destination is given). If you need to reorder the list, tap

- Browse the list if necessary and tap one of the list items. A full screen map appears with the selected point in the middle. The name and address of the Place is displayed at the top of the screen.

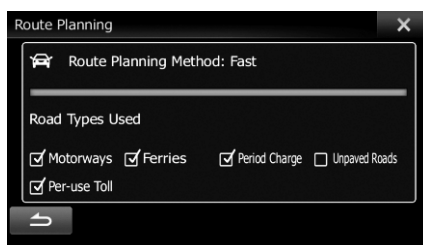
- (optional) Tap **i Quai Des Célestins** to see the details of the selected Place. Tap



to return to the map.

- After a short summary of the route parameters, the map appears showing the entire route. The route is automatically calculated. Tap **More** to modify route

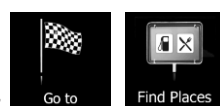
parameters, or tap **Go!** and start your journey.

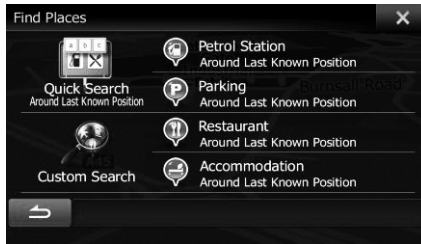


### 3.1.2.2 Searching for a Place of Interest using preset categories





The Preset search feature lets you quickly find the most frequently selected types of Places.

- In the Navigation menu, tap the following buttons:





2. The preset search categories appear:

-  **Petrol Station**  
Along Route:
  - If an active route exists, petrol stations are searched along the route.
  - If there is no active route (destination is not selected), they are searched around the current position.
  - If the current position is not available either (no GPS signal), they are searched around the last known position.
-  **Parking**  
At My Destination:
  - If an active route exists, parking lots are searched around the destination of the route.
  - If there is no active route (destination is not selected), they are searched around the current position.
  - If the current position is not available either (no GPS signal), they are searched around the last known position.
-  **Restaurant**  
Along Route:
  - If an active route exists, restaurants are searched along the route.
  - If there is no active route (destination is not selected), they are searched around the current position.
  - If the current position is not available either (no GPS signal), they are searched around the last known position.
-  **Accommodation**  
At My Destination:
  - If an active route exists, accommodation is searched around the destination of the route.
  - If there is no active route (destination is not selected), they are searched around the current position.
  - If the current position is not available either (no GPS signal), they are searched around the last known position.

3. Tap any of the quick search buttons to get an instant list of Places.



- (optional) The Places in the list are ordered by their distance from the current or last known position, from the destination or by the length of the necessary detour. If you

More

need to reorder the list, tap

- Browse the list if necessary and tap one of the list items. A full screen map appears with the selected point in the middle. The name and address of the Place is displayed at the top of the screen.



Quai Des Célestins

- (optional) Tap



to return to the map.

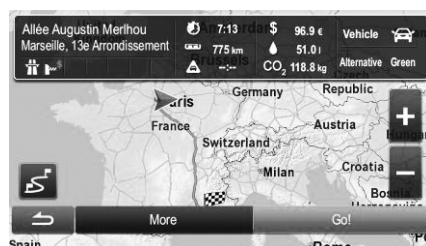
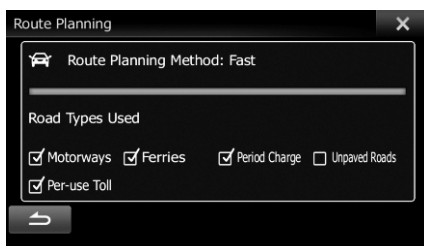
- After a short summary of the route parameters, the map appears showing the entire

More

route. The route is automatically calculated. Tap

Go!

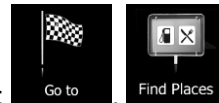
parameters, or tap



### 3.1.2.3 Searching for a Place of Interest by category


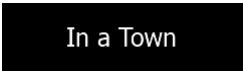


You can search for Places of Interest by their categories and subcategories.

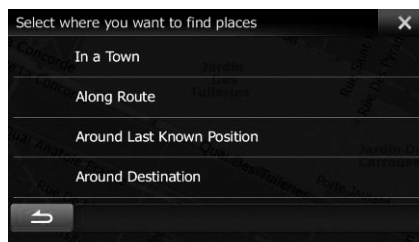
1. In the Navigation menu, tap the following buttons:



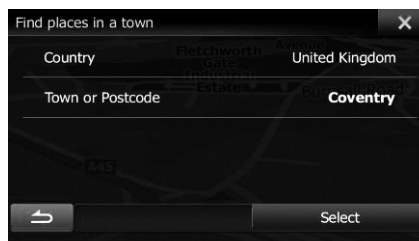
2. Tap .

3. Select the area around which the Place should be searched for:

- Tap  to search around the current position or if it is not available, around the last known position. (The result list will be ordered by the distance from this position.)
- Tap  to search for a place within a selected city/town. (The result list will be ordered by the distance from the centre of the selected city/town.)
- Tap  to search for a place around the destination of the active route. (The result list will be ordered by the distance from the destination.)
- Tap  to search along the active route, and not around a given point. This is useful when you search for a later stopover that results in a minimal detour only, such as searching for upcoming petrol stations or restaurants. (The result list will be ordered by the length of the necessary detour.)



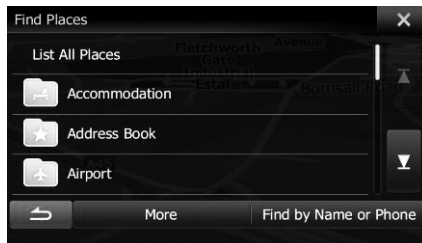
4. (optional) If you have selected , select the city/town to search in.



5. Select one of the main Place categories (e.g. Accommodation) or tap

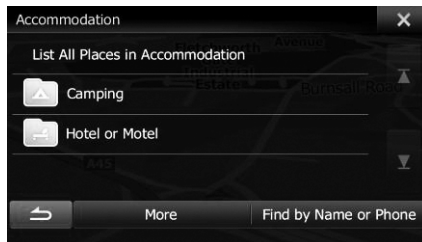


to list all Places around the selected location or along the route.

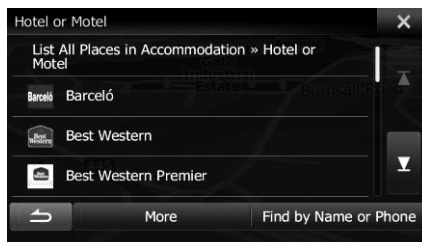


List All Places

6. Select one of the Place subcategories (e.g. Hotel or Motel) or tap **List All Places** to list all Places in the selected main category around the selected location or along the route.



7. Sometimes the list of brands in the selected Place subcategory appears. Select one brand or tap **List All Places** to list all Places in the selected subcategory around the selected location or along the route.



8. Finally, the results appear in a list.

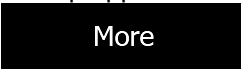
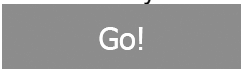


9. (optional) The Places in the list are ordered by their distance from the current or last known position, from the selected city/town, from the destination or by the length of the necessary detour. If you need to reorder the list, tap **More**.

10. Browse the list if necessary and tap one of the list items. A full screen map appears with the selected point in the middle. The name and address of the Place is displayed at the top of the screen.

11. (optional) Tap **Quai Des Célestins** to see the details of the selected Place. Tap **Back** to return to the map.



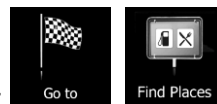
- After a short summary of the route parameters, the map appears showing the entire route. The route is automatically calculated. Tap  to modify route parameters, or tap  and start your journey.



### 3.1.2.4 Searching for a Place of Interest by name

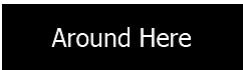
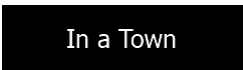

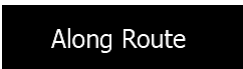
You can search for Places of Interest by their names. You can search around different locations or along your route in the whole Place database or in one Place category or subcategory only.

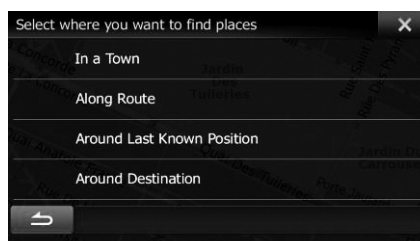
- In the Navigation menu, tap the following buttons:



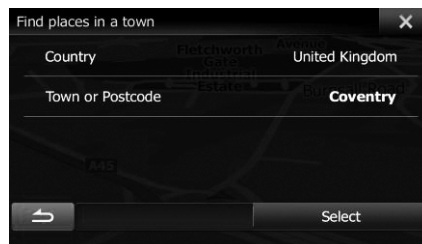
- Tap .

- Select the area around which the Place should be searched for:

- Tap  to search around the current position or if it is not available, around the last known position. (The result list will be ordered by the distance from this position.)
- Tap  to search for a place within a selected city/town. (The result list will be ordered by the distance from the centre of the selected city/town.)
- Tap  to search for a place around the destination of the active route. (The result list will be ordered by the distance from the destination.)
- Tap  to search along the active route, and not around a given point. This is useful when you search for a later stopover that results in a minimal detour only, such as searching for upcoming petrol stations or restaurants. (The result list will be ordered by the length of the necessary detour.)



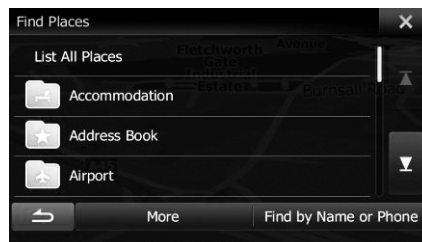
4. (optional) If you have selected **In a Town**, select the city/town to search in.



5. Select one of the main Place categories (e.g. Accommodation) to search in or tap

**Find by Name**

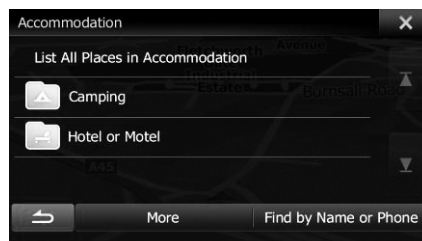
to search among all Places.



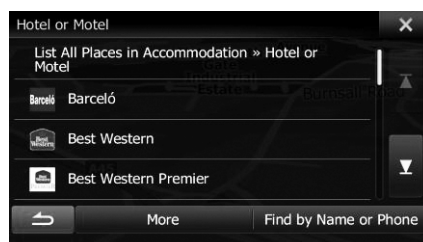
6. Select one of the Place subcategories (e.g. Hotel or Motel) to search in or tap

**Find by Name**

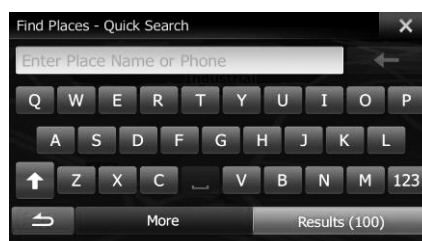
to search in the selected Place category.



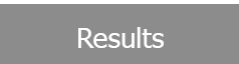
7. Tap **Find by Name** if you have not done it before.



8. Using the keyboard, start entering the name of the Place.



## Results

- After entering a few letters, tap  to open the list of Places with names containing the entered character sequence.




- (optional) The Places in the list are ordered by their distance from the current or last known position, from the selected city/town, from the destination or by the length of the



necessary detour. If you need to reorder the list, tap

- Browse the list if necessary and tap one of the list items. A full screen map appears with the selected point in the middle. The name and address of the Place is displayed at the top of the screen.

- (optional) Tap  **Quai Des Célestins** to see the details of the selected Place. Tap



to return to the map.

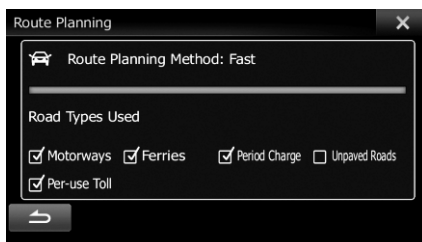
- After a short summary of the route parameters, the map appears showing the entire



route. The route is automatically calculated. Tap



parameters, or tap



### 3.1.2.5 Selecting nearby assistance from 'Where Am I?'

You can quickly search for nearby assistance from the 'Where Am I?' screen.



- On the Map screen, tap  to open the Quick menu.



2. Tap , and then .




3. Preset search categories appear, all for searching around the current position (or around the last known position if the current position is not available):

-  Car Repair Around Here : Car repair and roadside assistance services
-  Health Around Here : Medical and emergency services
-  Police Around Here : Police stations
-  Petrol Station Around Here : Petrol stations

4. Tap any of the quick search buttons to get an instant list of that type of Places.



5. (optional) The Places in the list are ordered by their distance from the current or last known position, from the selected city/town, from the destination or by the length of the

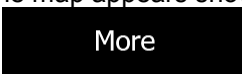
necessary detour. If you need to reorder the list, tap .


6. Browse the list if necessary and tap one of the list items. A full screen map appears with the selected point in the middle. The name and address of the Place is displayed at the top of the screen.

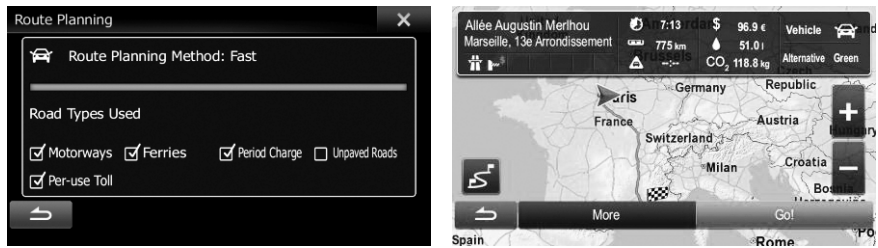
7. (optional) Tap   to see the details of the selected Place. Tap



to return to the map.

8. After a short summary of the route parameters, the map appears showing the entire route. The route is automatically calculated. Tap  to modify route

parameters, or tap  and start your journey.



### 3.1.3 Using the free form search

A quick way to search for an address, a Place, an Address Book entry or a History item is to use the free form search. Do as follows:

1. In the Navigation menu, tap



2. Open the

More

menu and tap

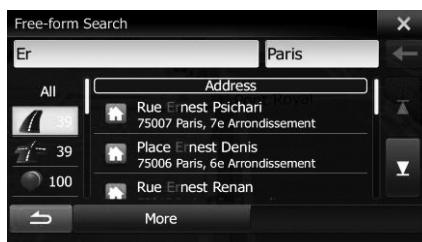
Free-from Search



3. In the left field enter the name you are looking for. It can be a street address (just the street name or both the street and the house number), the name of a Place, a previous destination or an Address Book entry.
4. If you are searching in an area that is far from your current location, tap on the right field and enter a city name or a post code from the target area.
5. While you type, the number of matching items is displayed on the left broken down by

All

category. Tap one of the categories or the



6. Select one of the items from the list.
7. After a short summary of the route parameters, the map appears showing the entire

route. The route is automatically calculated. Tap

More

parameters, or tap

Go!

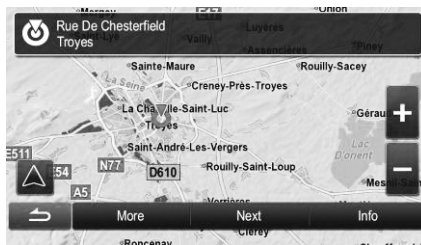



### 3.1.4 Selecting a map location as the destination


1. In the Navigation menu, tap the following buttons:



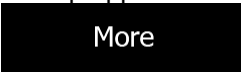
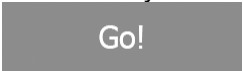
2. Locate your destination on the map: move and scale the map as needed.



3. Tap the location that you want to select as your destination. The Cursor (  ) appears.

4. Tap  to select the Cursor as the destination.

5. After a short summary of the route parameters, the map appears showing the entire

route. The route is automatically calculated. Tap  to modify route parameters, or tap  and start your journey.

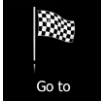



### 3.1.5 Selecting the destination from your Address Book

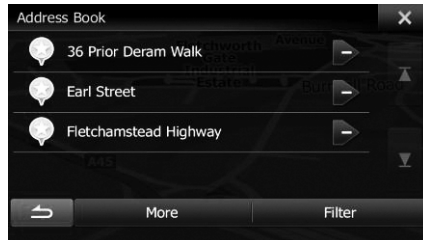
You can select a location that you have already saved as an Address Book entry to be your destination. Adding a location to the Address Book is described on page 56.


1. Access the Address Book:

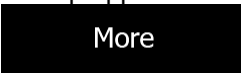
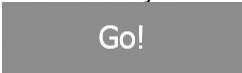
- If you are on the Map screen, tap  and then tap .

- If you are in the Navigation menu, tap  and then tap .

2. The Address Book is displayed.



3. Tap the entry that you want to set as your destination. If necessary, browse down to see more of the list or tap  and enter a few letters from the name of the entry.

4. After a short summary of the route parameters, the map appears showing the entire route. The route is automatically calculated. Tap  to modify route parameters, or tap  and start your journey.





### 3.1.6 Selecting a recent destination from the History

The destinations that you have set earlier appear in the History.

1. Access the History:

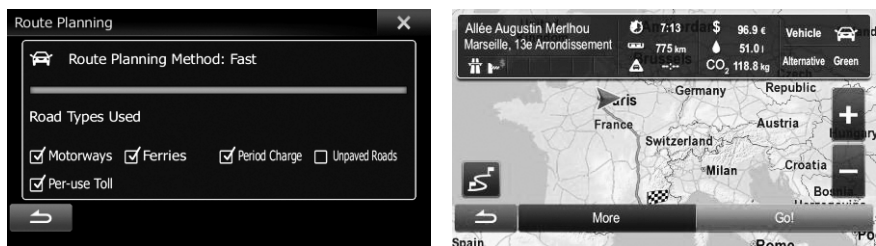
- If you are on the Map screen, tap  and then tap .

- If you are in the Navigation menu, tap  and then tap .

2. The list of recent destinations appears. Smart History promotes three destinations to the first page based on your previous routes (most likely destinations). The rest of the destinations are ordered by time they were last selected. If necessary, scroll the list to see earlier destinations.





3. Select a destination from the list.
4. After a short summary of the route parameters, the map appears showing the entire route. The route is automatically calculated. Tap **More** to modify route parameters, or tap **Go!** and start your journey.



### 3.1.7 Entering the coordinate of the destination

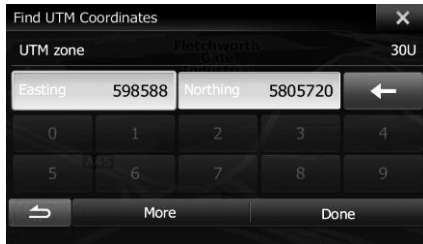
You can also select a destination by entering its coordinate. Do as follows:

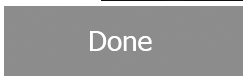
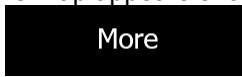

1. In the Navigation menu, tap .
2. Open the **More** menu and tap .
3. You can enter the latitude and longitude values in any of the following formats: decimal degrees; degrees and decimal minutes; or degrees, minutes and decimal seconds.

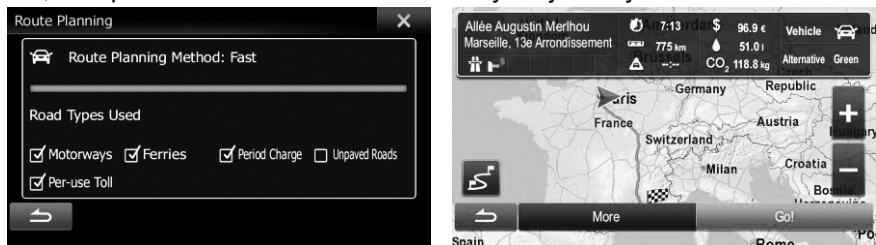


4. (optional) If necessary, tap **More** then  and enter the coordinate in UTM format.










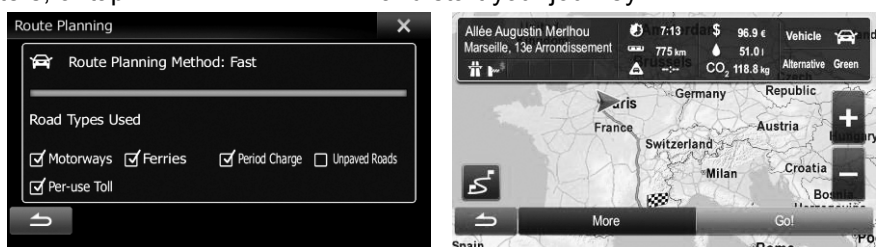
5. When finished, tap .
6. After a short summary of the route parameters, the map appears showing the entire route. The route is automatically calculated. Tap  to modify route parameters, or tap  and start your journey.



### 3.1.8 Navigate to a location stored in a picture

You can also set the location stored in a picture as your destination. Do as follows:

1. In the Navigation menu, tap .
2. Open the  menu and tap .
3. The list of pictures stored on the microSD card appears. Select one picture from the list.
4. After a short summary of the route parameters, the map appears showing the entire route. The route is automatically calculated. Tap  to modify route parameters, or tap  and start your journey.



**Note!** Only geotagged JPG files contain location information. That is why these kind of files can only be used in navigation. Other picture files do not appear in the list.

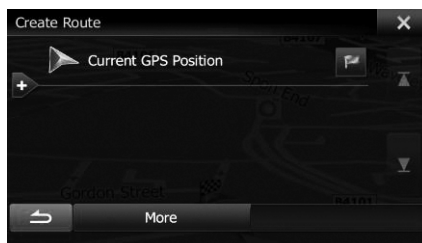
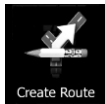
### 3.1.9 Building a route from the list of destinations (Create Route)

You can also build your route destination by destination from the Route menu.

1. In the Navigation menu, tap



2. Tap



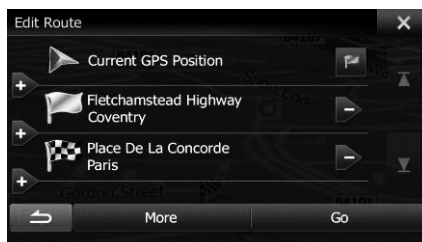
3. There is only one line in the list of route points, the start point of the route, normally the current GPS position.


4. Tap  to select the destination.

5. The Destination menu appears and you can select the destination of the route the same way as described in the previous sections.



6. When the new destination is selected, the list returns.




7. To add more destinations, tap  where you want to insert the new route point in the list, and repeat the above procedure.

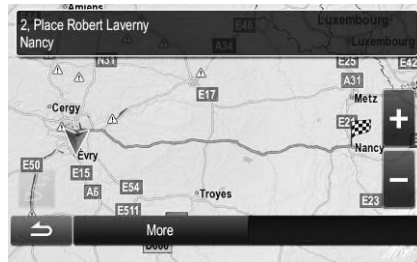
### 3.2 Viewing the entire route on the map

It is easy to get a map overview of the active route. Do as follows:

1. In the Navigation menu, tap



2. Tap . The active route is displayed in its full length on the map together with additional information and controls.



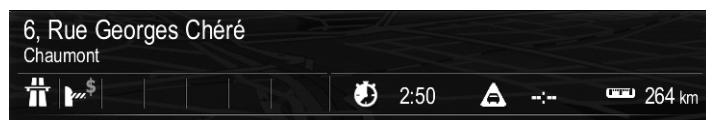
### 3.3 Checking route parameters and accessing route related functions

You can check different parameters of the route recommended by the software.


1. In the Navigation menu, tap







2. The following pieces of information are displayed:
  - The name and/or address of the destination.
  - Warning icons (if any). They provide extra information about your route (e.g. unpaved roads or toll roads to be taken).
  - The total time of the route.
  - The total length of the route.
  - Estimated delay calculated from traffic events on your route.



3. You have the following options on this screen (for detailed instructions on how to use them, see the next chapter):

- Tap  to edit the route: to add or remove destinations or change their sequence. You can also set a route start point other than your current location. This can be useful to plan and save a future trip.

- Tap  to display the entire route on the map.

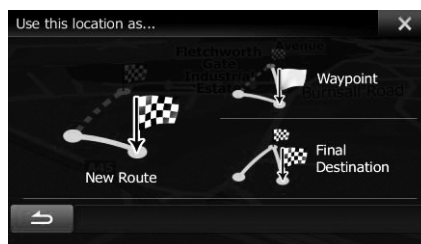
- Tap  to bypass a part of the route.
- Tap  to delete the active route.
- Tap  to open a list with more options like changing route parameters, simulating the route, saving the active route or loading a previously saved route.
- Tap  to return to the Navigation menu.

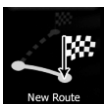

### 3.4 Modifying the route

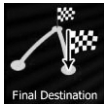
When navigation is already started, there are several ways to modify the active route. The following sections show some of those options.

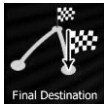
#### 3.4.1 Selecting a new destination when already having a route: New Route, Waypoint or Final Destination

If you already have a recommended route and you select a new destination as described in the above sections, the application will ask you whether to start a new route, add a new waypoint (intermediate destination) to the route or append the newly selected destination at the end of the current route.



- Tap  to plan a new route to the newly selected location. The previous destination and waypoint(s) are deleted.
- Tap  to add the newly selected location as an intermediate destination to your route. The other destinations of the route remain intact. Note: the new waypoint is placed among destinations to keep the route optimal. To decide where a waypoint to appear, use the Edit Route feature.



- Tap  to append the newly selected destination at the end of the route. The other destinations of the route remain intact. The previous final destination is now the last waypoint.

### 3.4.2 Setting a new starting position for the route

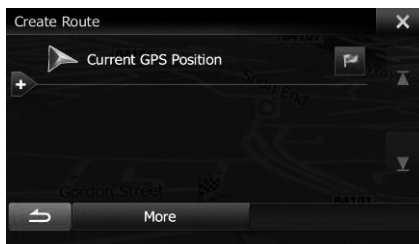
For normal navigation, all routes are planned from the current position. In order to check future routes, simulate them or see their length in time and distance, you can turn off the GPS receiver. Then you can set the starting point of the route to a different location than the current GPS position.




1. In the Navigation menu, tap



2. If you already have a route, tap . If you are starting a new route, tap .



3. The first line is the start of the route, normally the current GPS position. Tap  and confirm your action at the warning message.



4. The Destination menu appears and you can select the start point of the route the same way you select a destination.



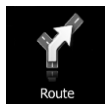
5. When the new start point is set, tap **Go**.
6. The map returns with a transparent Vehimarker (showing that there is no GPS reception). If an active route already existed, it is now recalculated starting from the selected location.



7. To return to normal navigation, tap **Turn on GPS**.

### 3.4.3 Editing the list of destinations (Edit Route)

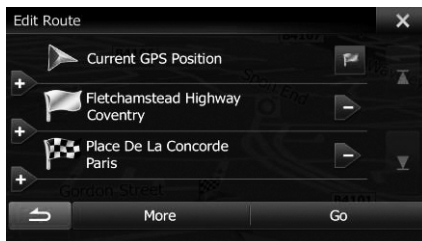
You can edit the route by modifying the list of destinations. You can add or remove destinations, modify the start position or reorder the list.



1. In the Navigation menu, tap **Route**.




2. Tap **Edit Route**.








3. You have the following options:
  - Tap **+** to add a new destination.
  - Tap **-** to delete a destination.
  - Tap **Flag** to modify the start point of the route.

More

- Tap  to reorder the list. You can do it manually or you can let the application optimise the route for you.

### 3.4.4 Cancelling the active route

To cancel the navigated route, do one of the following:


- If you are on the Map screen, tap  and then tap . (If you have a route with waypoints, you need to tap  until all waypoints are deleted.)
- In the Navigation menu, tap  and then tap . The active route is deleted with all its waypoints.

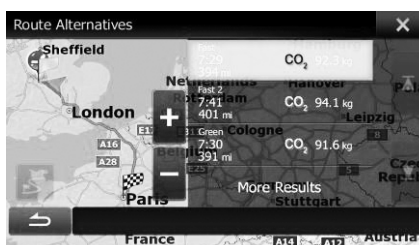
### 3.4.5 Checking route alternatives


To recalculate the active route with a different route planning method, you can modify the Route settings. There is another way to do this and to compare different route alternatives with the same route planning method. Do as follows:

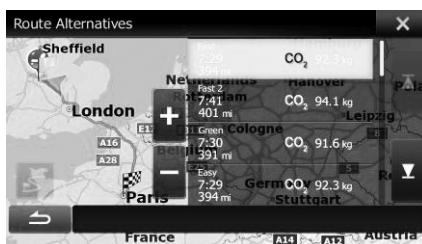
1. In the Navigation menu, tap .




2. Tap .
3. You see the basic details of three route alternatives with the selected route planning method. Tap any of them to see it on the map.



- Or if you cannot find a good alternative, tap  and scroll down for routes with different routing methods.

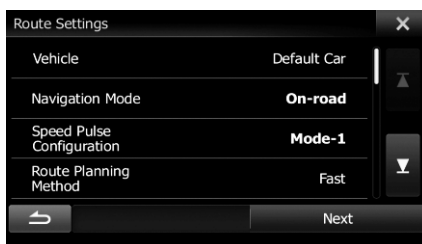


- Select one of the route alternatives then tap  to return to the Map screen. The software recalculates the route. The orange line now shows the new recommended route.



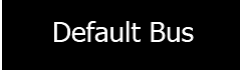

### 3.4.6 Changing the vehicle used in route planning

To recalculate the active route for a different vehicle, do as follows. These changes can also be made in Settings.

- On the Map screen, tap  and then tap .



- Tap  and then tap one of the following:

- 
- 
- 
- 

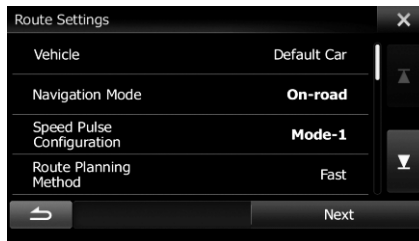
- The software recalculates the route optimised for the new vehicle type. The orange line now shows the new recommended route.








### 3.4.7 Changing the road types used in route planning


To recalculate the active route with different road type preferences, do as follows. These changes can also be made in Settings.

1. On the Map screen, tap  and then tap .



2. Tap any of the listed road types to modify the route. If needed, scroll the list for all road types. You have the following options (their order depends on the selected vehicle type):

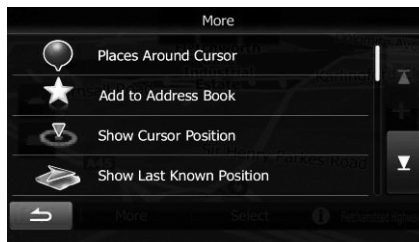
-  **Motorways** - You might need to avoid motorways when you are driving a slow car or you are towing another vehicle.
-  **Period Charge** - Charge roads are pay roads where you can purchase a pass or vignette to use the road for a longer period of time. They can be enabled or disabled separately from toll roads.
-  **Per-use Toll** - The software includes toll roads (pay roads where there is a per-use charge) in the routes by default. If you disable toll roads, your software plans the best toll-free route.
-  **Ferries** - The software includes ferries in a planned route by default. However, a map does not necessarily contain information about the accessibility of temporary ferries. You might also need to pay a fare on ferries.
-  **Unpaved Roads** - The software excludes unpaved roads by default: unpaved roads can be in a bad condition and usually you cannot reach the speed limit on them.

3. Tap  to confirm the changes. The software recalculates the route. The orange line now shows the new recommended route.

### 3.5 Saving a location as an Address Book entry

You can add any location to the Address Book, the list of frequently used destinations. Planning a route to one of these destinations was described earlier.

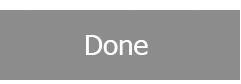
1. Select a destination as described before. It can be an address, a Place, any location on the map, a previously used destination from History, a coordinate or a location where a photo was taken.
2. When the full screen map appears with the selected location in the middle, tap



3. Tap . The button is black with a white star icon and the text "Add to Favourites".

4. (optional) Using the keyboard, you can change the name offered for the Address Book entry.



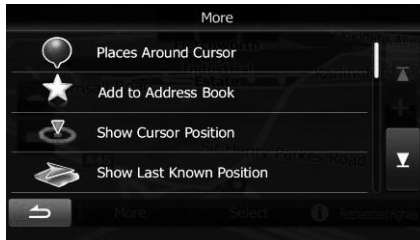
5. Tap  to save the location as a new frequent destination. The button is a grey rectangular button with the word "Done" in white text.


### 3.6 Saving a location as an alert point

You can save any map location as an alert point (for example a speed camera or a railway crossing).

1. Browse the map and select a location. The red Cursor appears there.


2. Tap .



3. Scroll down the list and tap .

4. On the newly opened screen, select the type of the alert point, the direction from which you expect the alert, and (if applicable) the speed limit for this alert point.



5. Tap  to save the location as a new alert point.

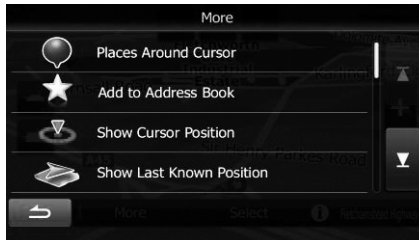
### 3.7 Editing an alert point

You can edit a previously saved or uploaded alert point (for example a speed camera or a railway crossing).

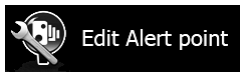
1. Browse the map and select the alert point to edit. The red circle appears around the alert point.

2. Tap

More



3. Scroll down the list and tap



4. On the newly opened screen, modify the type of the alert point, the direction from which you expect the alert, or (if applicable) the speed limit for this alert point.



5. Tap

Save

to save the changes to the alert point.

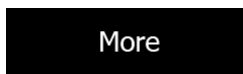
### 3.8 Watching the simulation of the route


You can run a simulated navigation that demonstrates the active route. Do as follows:

1. In the Navigation menu, tap







2. Tap



3. Tap  **Simulate Navigation**. The simulation starts from the starting point of the route, and using a realistic speed, it leads you through the whole recommended route.



1. (optional) You have the following controls during the simulation:







- : Jump to the next route event (manoeuvre).
- : Pause the simulation.
- : Jump to the previous route event (manoeuvre).
-  **1x**: Tap to increase the speed of the simulation to 4, 8 or 16 times faster. Now tap again to return to the normal speed.

2. Tap  to stop the simulation.

## 4 Off-road navigation

When first started, Alpine X008/INE-W957 series calculates routes using the road network of the high quality vector maps provided with the product.

You can switch the application to off-road mode in Navigation settings in one of the following ways:

- From the Navigation menu, tap ,  and then .
- From the Map screen, tap ,  and then .

Most of the procedures described for on-road navigation also apply to off-road navigation. However, there are some that are not available in this navigation mode (for example you cannot open the itinerary as you have no manoeuvres just route points and straight lines between them).

### 4.1 Selecting the destination of the route

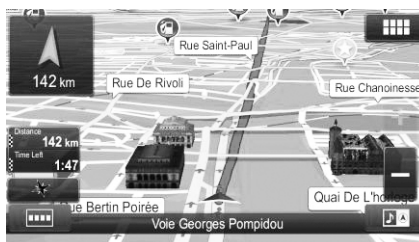
Selecting the start point or a destination (waypoint or final destination) is the same as described at on-road navigation. The only difference is that route points are linked to form a route with straight lines regardless of the road network and traffic regulations.

### 4.2 Navigating in off-road mode

The real difference between the on-road and off-road modes is the navigation itself. When you are on the Map screen with an off-road route:

- your position and heading is not aligned with the nearest road and
- there is no turn by turn navigation just a recommended direction.

You see a straight line drawn between your current position and the next destination to reach. The Turn Preview field in the top left corner shows an arrow with your bearing and the distance of the next destination.



When you reach a waypoint, the straight line will show the direction to the next destination.

When you reach the final destination, navigation ends.

## 5 Reference Guide

On the following pages you will find the description of the different concepts and menu screens of the software.

### 5.1 Concepts

#### 5.1.1 Smart Zoom

Smart Zoom provides much more than just a usual automatic zoom feature:

- **While following a route:** when approaching a turn, it will zoom in and raise the view angle to let you easily recognise your manoeuvre at the next junction. If the next turn is at a distance, it will zoom out and lower the view angle to be flat so you can see the road in front of you.
- **While driving without an active route:** Smart Zoom will zoom in if you drive slowly and zoom out when you drive at high speed.

#### 5.1.2 Route calculation and recalculation

Your software calculates the route based on your preferences:

- Route planning methods:
  - **Fast**: Gives a quick route if you can travel at or near the speed limit on all roads. Usually the best selection for fast and normal cars.
  - **Short**: Gives a route that has the smallest total distance of all possible routes. It can be practical for slow vehicles.
  - **Green**: Gives a quick but fuel efficient route based on the fuel consumption data given in Route settings. Travel cost and CO<sub>2</sub> emission calculations are estimations only. They cannot take elevations, curves and traffic conditions into account.
  - **Easy**: Results in a route with fewer turns and no difficult manoeuvres. With this option, you can make your software to take, for example, the motorway instead of a series of smaller roads or streets.
- Vehicle types:

When creating a new vehicle profile, select one of the below vehicle types.

  - **Default Car**:
    - Manoeuvre restrictions and directional constraints are taken into account when planning a route.



- Roads are used only if access for cars is allowed.
- Private roads and resident-only roads are used only if they are inevitable to reach the destination.
- Walkways are excluded from routes.

#### Default Emergency

- All manoeuvres are available in intersections.
- Directional constraints are taken into account the way that opposite direction is allowed with a low speed.
- A private road is used only if the destination is there.
- Walkways are excluded from routes.

#### Default Bus

- Manoeuvre restrictions and directional constraints are taken into account when planning a route.
- Roads are used only if access for buses is allowed.
- Private roads, resident-only roads and walkways are excluded from routes.

#### Taxi

- Manoeuvre restrictions and directional constraints are taken into account when planning a route.
- Roads are used only if access for taxis is allowed.
- Private roads, resident-only roads and walkways are excluded from routes.

- Road types used or avoided in route calculation:



Whenever data exist, route calculation takes into account statistical traffic data for the given day of week and time of day.

Real-time Traffic events are also taken into account and sometimes greatly modify the route.

Your software automatically recalculates the route if you deviate from the proposed itinerary or if a newly received Traffic event concerns a part of the recommended route.

### 5.1.3 Green routing

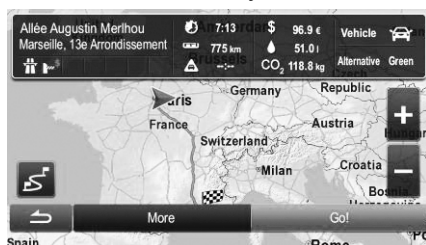
Route calculation is not only about finding the quickest or shortest route. For some of the vehicle types, you can also check the fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emission when planning a route, and you can create cost effective routes with less effect on the environment.

In Route settings, you can edit the parameters of the selected vehicle. Enter the fuel consumption values and the price of the fuel. You can also select whether you want to see the difference between your route and the green route even if the selected routing method is not Green.

Green

After the above parameters are set, select **Green** as route planning method to get a fast but also fuel efficient route. Note that travel cost and CO<sub>2</sub> emission calculations are estimations only. They cannot take elevations, turns, curves and traffic conditions into account. Also, this routing is not meant to give you the "greenest" route of all. It is still important to travel quickly so the result is a fast route with low fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emission.

With a vehicle type where green routing is selectable, whichever route planning method is selected, the Green details are also shown when you confirm the route:



If the selected route planning method is not Green, and you have allowed the application to show the green alternative, the price, fuel consumption and CO<sub>2</sub> emission differences between your selected route and the Green route are also shown on this screen:



Tap the field with these details to switch the route to Green immediately.

### 5.1.4 Speed limit warning

Maps may contain information about the speed limits of the road segments. The software is able to warn you if you exceed the current limit. This information may not be available for your region (ask your local dealer), or may not be fully correct for all roads in the map. Speed warning can be fine-tuned in Sound and Warning settings.

You can set the relative speed above which the application initiates the warning.

The following warning types are available:

- Audio warning: you receive a verbal warning when you exceed the speed limit with the given percentage.
- Visual warning: the current speed limit is shown on the map when you exceed it (for

example:  ).

You can also choose to see the speed limit sign on the map all the time.

### 5.1.5 Traffic information in route planning

The recommended route is not always the same between two points. Offline statistical traffic information (historical speed information or traffic patterns) can be taken into account in the route calculation based on the time of day and the day of week whenever suitable data exists. In addition, real-time traffic information can help you avoid current traffic events like temporary road closures or a traffic jam caused by an accident. Both functions are subject to data availability.

#### 5.1.5.1 Historical traffic

If statistical traffic information is stored with the map data, the software can take them into account when planning a route. In normal cases, these statistics help you avoid usual traffic jams on the given day of week in the given hour but in some cases like on public holidays that fall on normal weekdays, they can be misleading. You can enable this feature in Traffic settings.

#### 5.1.5.2 Real-time traffic information (TMC)

TMC (Traffic Message Channel) can provide you with the real-time status of the traffic. Route calculation can avoid road blocks or unexpected traffic jams caused by an accident.

TMC is a specific application of the FM Radio Data System (RDS) used for broadcasting real-time traffic and weather information.

Using traffic information is enabled by default in the software.



**Note!** TMC is not a global service. It may not be available in your country or region. Ask your local dealer for coverage details.


---

Your device contains the TMC receiver that is needed to receive Traffic events.

If public Traffic data is broadcast at your location, the software automatically takes into account the traffic events received. You do not need to set anything in the program. The receiver will automatically search the FM radio stations for TMC data, and the decoded information will immediately be used in route planning. When your software receives traffic information that may affect your route, the program will warn you that it is recalculating the route, and navigation will continue with a new route that is optimal considering the most up-to-date traffic conditions.


To fine-tune this recalculation, you can set the minimum delay that can trigger a route recalculation, or you can instruct the software to have you confirm the new recommended route before it takes effect. You can do these in Traffic settings.

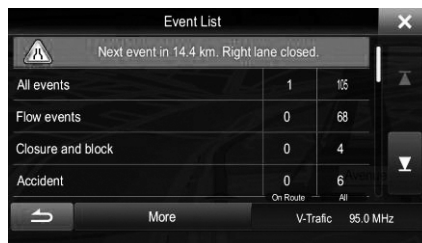


A special icon (  ) is displayed on the Map screen to show you whether traffic events are received. The icon shows the status of the traffic receiver when there are no traffic events on your route, otherwise it shows the type of the next traffic event on your route.

Road segments affected by traffic events are displayed with an alternate colour on the map, and small symbols above the road show the nature of the event:



Tap  to open the list of traffic even categories :

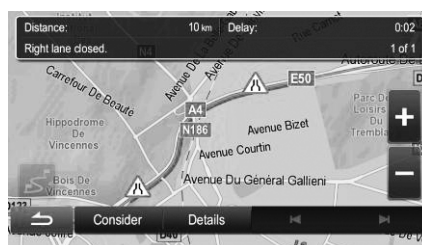


In the first column you can see the number of traffic events on your route. The second column contains the full count of traffic events in the categories.

Tap any of the even types to open the list of traffic events or tap the first line to show all events:

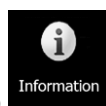


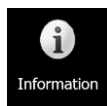
Now tap any of the list items to see its details, and to display the affected road segment in its full length on the map:

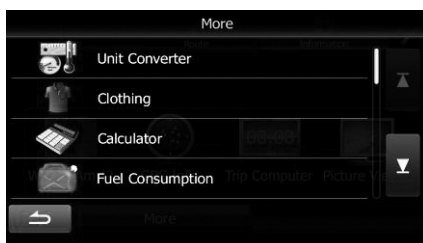












## 5.2 Information menu

The Information menu provides you with various options and additional applications.



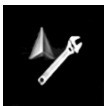
In the Navigation menu, tap .



Button	Description
	Tap this button to get information about the current location and to find nearby help.
	Tap this button to open the GPS Information screen with satellite position and signal strength information.
	<p>If you save your trip logs when you arrive at some of your destinations or let the application automatically save the trip logs for you, those logs are all listed here. Tap one of the trips to see the trip statistics, speed and altitude profile. If track log has also been saved, you can display it on the map with the selected colour.</p> <p>As a shortcut, the Trip monitor can be accessed from the Navigation menu.</p>
	Tap this button to access additional functions. See the list below.
	Access travel applications: the unit converter helps you convert between various different international units for temperature, speed, area or pressure, etc.
	Access travel applications: the clothing size converter helps you convert between various different international size units for men's or women's cloth types and shoes.
	The scientific calculator helps you in all your calculation needs. Tap the Mode button for additional functions and use the memory to save your results.
	The Fuel consumption monitor helps you keep track of the consumption of your car even if you do not use navigation for all your journeys. Set the initial odometer value and then record the distance taken and fuel filled in whenever you fill your car. You can also set reminders for regular car maintenance.
	Tap this button to see the sunlit and dark areas of the world. Your current location and route points are marked on the map. Tap the Details button to see the exact sunrise and sunset times for all your route points (your current location, all waypoints and the final destination).
	Select a country from the list and see useful driving information about the selected country. Information may include speed limits on different road types, the maximum blood alcohol level and any compulsory equipment you need to show when stopped by the police.

## 5.3 Settings menu

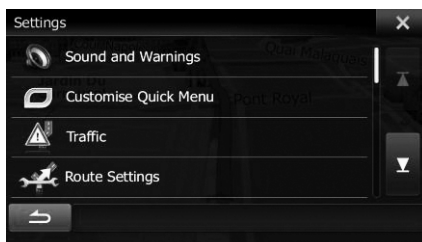
You can configure the program settings, and modify the behaviour of the software.















In the Navigation menu, tap




The Settings menu has several options. Tap



Button	Description
 Sound and Warnings	Adjust the sound volume, mute your device or change the voice guidance language. In addition, you can enable and set up different warnings and alerts.  Enable different sounds and alerts in the application.
 Customise Quick menu	The content of the Quick menu (page 19) is fully customisable. Tap the button you want to change, and select its new function from the list.
 Traffic	The recommended route is not always the same between two points. Whenever suitable data exists, traffic information can be taken into account in the route calculation.
 Route Settings	These settings determine how routes will be calculated. Select the type of vehicle you are driving, the road types used in route planning, and the route planning method.
 Map Settings	You can fine-tune the appearance of the Map screen. Adjust the map view to your needs, choose suitable colour themes from the list for both daytime and night use, change the blue arrow to a 3D car model, show or suppress 3D buildings, turn track logging on or off, and manage your Place visibility sets (which Places to show on the map).
 Visual Guidance	Adjust how the software helps you navigate with different kinds of route related information on the Map screen.
 Regional	These settings allow you to customise the application for your local language, measurement units, time and date settings and formats, as well as to choose the time zone.
 Trip Monitor	Trip logs and track logs contain useful information about your trips. Trip logs can be saved manually when you reach your destination or you can turn on the automatic saving here.
 Start Configuration Wizard	Modify the basic software parameters set during the initial setup process. For details, see page 7.
 Reset to Defaults	Delete all saved data and reset all settings to their factory defaults.
 Update	Visit <a href="http://alpine.naviextras.com">alpine.naviextras.com</a> to get additional content, such as new maps or 3D landmarks and useful applications.
 About	The About section provides you with product information. Read the Software and Database End User License Agreement, or check the map and other contents of the application. You can also access program usage statistics.

### 5.3.1 Sound and Warnings

Adjust the sound volume, mute your device or change the voice guidance language. In addition, you can enable and set up different warnings and alerts.

Button	Description
Volume	Tap this button to adjust the volume of the different sounds in the application. A new screen shows the different sound types and their controls. See below for details.
Voice Language	<p>This button shows the current voice guidance profile. By tapping the button, you can select a new profile from the list of available languages and speakers. Tap any of these to hear a sample voice prompt. Just tap  when you have selected the new spoken language.</p>
TTS Pro	<p>Tap this button to adjust the enhanced TTS features. The following settings are available:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• You can set the feature to read out traffic messages.</li><li>• Whenever a route is calculated, the software can read out the quick summary of the route.</li><li>• When you cross country borders, the application can read out the information about the country you have just entered.</li><li>• All system messages can also be announced.</li></ul>
Advanced Settings	<p>Street names sound correctly only if you use a native voice profile for the country. You can decide whether the application</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• tries to read the street names in a foreign country,</li><li>• use road numbers in your language or</li><li>• announces the manoeuvre only.</li></ul> <p>You can also decide whether you want an announcement for distance manoeuvres or it is enough to receive the information when the turn is near.</p>
Verbosity Level	Tap this button to set the verbosity of the voice instructions: how much they tell and how often they speak.





Speed Warning Settings	<p>Maps may contain information about the speed limits of the road segments. The software is able to warn you if you exceed the current limit. This information may not be available for your region (ask your local dealer), or may not be fully correct for all roads in the map. This setting lets you decide whether you wish to receive visible and/or audible warnings.</p> <p>Adjust the slider to set the relative speed above which the application initiates the warning.</p> <p>The following warning types are available:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Audio warning: you receive a verbal warning when you exceed the speed limit with the given percentage.</li> <li>• Visual warning: the current speed limit is shown on the map when you exceed it.</li> </ul> <p>If you prefer to see the speed limit sign on the map all the time (normally it is shown only if your speed exceeds it), you can set it here.</p>
Warning Sign Alerts	<p>Maps may contain driver alert information. Tap this button to turn on or off these warnings and to set the distance from the hazard to receive the warning at. These can be set individually for the different warning types.</p>

You can control the volume of the following sound types:

Button	Description
Guidance	These controls affect the volume of the guidance sounds (verbal instructions).
Ding	Turn off the attention tone preceding verbal instructions or adjust its volume.
Alert Beeps	These controls affect the volume of the alert sounds (beeps).
Key	Key sounds provide audible confirmation of tapping the touch screen. These controls affect key sounds.

Controls for each sound type:





Button	Description
	Use the switch to mute the related sound. The slider becomes inactive. Tap again to re-enable.
	Adjusts the volume of the related sound.

### 5.3.2 Customise Quick menu

The content of the Quick menu is fully customisable. Tap the button you want to change, and select its new function from the list.



### 5.3.3 Traffic settings

The recommended route is not always the same between two points. Whenever suitable data exists, traffic information can be taken into account in the route calculation.

Button	Description
 Smart Routes	Use this switch to enable or disable historical traffic data and traffic patterns. This locally stored information can be very useful in normal circumstances but for example on public holidays it may be better to turn off in order not to take into account normal weekday traffic jams.
 Traffic Receiver	Use this switch to enable or disable the TMC receiver that can receive real-time traffic information. The rest of the buttons below are all related to the TMC function and are available only if the receiver is enabled.
 Detour	<p>This setting determines how your software uses the received real-time traffic information in route calculation. When calculating a new route, or when recalculation becomes necessary based on the received Traffic events, your software avoids traffic events if it makes sense.</p> <p>You can also set the minimum delay that triggers route recalculation, and you can instruct the application if you want to confirm every recalculation.</p>
 Event Types	Tap this button to open the list of traffic event types, and select which events to take into account in route calculation.

### 5.3.4 Route settings

These settings determine how routes will be calculated.






Button	Description
 Vehicle	<p>You can set the type of vehicle you will use to navigate the route. Based upon this setting, some of the road types can be excluded from the route, or some of the restrictions may not be taken into account in route calculation.</p> <p>You can edit the parameters of the selected vehicle profile, or you can even create new vehicle profiles if you tap More.</p>
 Navigation Mode	On-road navigation creates a turn by turn itinerary using the road network on the map. Switch to off-road navigation to navigate between destinations in a straight line.

Route Planning Method	The route calculation can be optimised for different situations and vehicle types by changing the planning method. See below for details.
-----------------------	---

To let the route fit your needs, you can also set which road types are to be considered for or to be excluded from the route if possible.


Excluding a road type is a preference. It does not necessarily mean total prohibition. If your destination can only be accessed using some of the excluded road types, they will be used but only as much as necessary. In this case a warning icon will be shown on the Route screen, and the part of the route not matching your preference will be displayed in a different colour on the map.




In the list of road types you can see in how many segments and what total length of the road type is used in the current route.

Button	Description
 Motorways	You might need to avoid motorways when you are driving a slow car or you are towing another vehicle.
 Period Charge	Charge roads are pay roads where you can purchase a pass or vignette to use the road for a longer period of time. They can be enabled or disabled separately from toll roads.
 Per-use Toll	The software includes toll roads (pay roads where there is a per-use charge) in the routes by default. If you disable toll roads, your software plans the best toll-free route.
 Ferries	The software includes ferries in a planned route by default. However, a map does not necessarily contain information about the accessibility of temporary ferries. You might also need to pay a fare on ferries.
 Unpaved Roads	The software excludes unpaved roads by default: unpaved roads can be in a bad condition and usually you cannot reach the speed limit on them.

## Vehicle profiles:

Vehicle

When you first tap , you see the list of default vehicle profiles. You have the following options:

Button	Description
	You can edit the parameters of the vehicle profile.
More	Tap this button to reveal the below options.
 Add Profile	Tap this button to create your own vehicle profile.
 Restore All Profiles	Tap this button to reset all vehicle profiles to their default settings.

When creating a new vehicle profile, first you need to select the vehicle type. Then you need to set the following parameters. You can modify the same parameters when you edit an existing profile:

Button	Description
Name	Tap this button to rename the profile for something meaningful.
Fuel Consumption Urban	Enter the average consumption of your vehicle when used in built-up areas. The unit for consumption can be set in Regional Settings.
Fuel Consumption Rural	Enter the average consumption of your vehicle when used on highways. The unit for consumption can be set in Regional Settings.
Engine Type	Select the engine and fuel type of your vehicle. This helps in estimating the CO <sub>2</sub> emission.
Fuel Price	Enter the average fuel price for travel cost calculation. The currency can be set in Regional Settings.
Max. Speed	Set the maximum speed you travel with the vehicle.

### Vehicle types:

When creating a new vehicle profile, select one of the below vehicle types.

- **Default Car**:
  - Manoeuvre restrictions and directional constraints are taken into account when planning a route.
  - Roads are used only if access for cars is allowed.
  - Private roads and resident-only roads are used only they are inevitable to reach the destination.
  - Walkways are excluded from routes.
- **Default Emergency**:
  - All manoeuvres are available in intersections.
  - Directional constraints are taken into account the way that opposite direction is allowed with a low speed.
  - A private road is used only if the destination is there.
  - Walkways are excluded from routes.
- **Default Bus**:
  - Manoeuvre restrictions and directional constraints are taken into account when planning a route.
  - Roads are used only if access for buses is allowed.

- Private roads, resident-only roads and walkways are excluded from routes.

### • Taxi

- Manoeuvre restrictions and directional constraints are taken into account when planning a route.
- Roads are used only if access for taxis is allowed.
- Private roads, resident-only roads and walkways are excluded from routes.

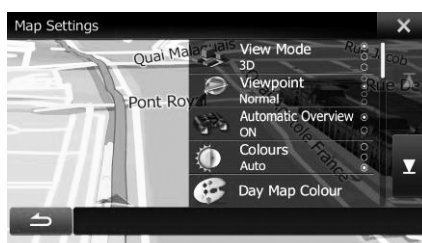
## Route Planning Method types:













Button	Description
Fast	Gives a quick route if you can travel at or near the speed limit on all roads. Usually the best selection for fast and normal cars.
Short	Gives a short route to minimise the distance to travel. It can be practical for slow vehicles. Searching for a short route regardless of the speed, this route type is rarely practical for normal vehicles.
Green	Gives a quick but fuel efficient route based on the fuel consumption data given in Route settings (page 72). Travel cost and CO <sub>2</sub> emission calculations are estimations only. They cannot take elevations, curves and traffic conditions into account.
Easy	Results in a route with fewer turns and no difficult manoeuvres. With this option, you can make your software to take, for example, the motorway instead of a series of smaller roads or streets.

### 5.3.5 Map settings

You can fine-tune the appearance of the Map screen. Adjust the map view to your needs, choose suitable colour themes from the list for both daytime and night use, change the blue arrow to a 3D car model, show or hide 3D buildings, turn track logging on or off, and manage your Place visibility sets (which Places to show on the map).

The map is always shown on the screen so that you can see the effect when you change a setting.






Button	Description
 View Mode 3D	Switch the map view between a 3D perspective view and two 2D top-down view modes.
 Viewpoint Normal	Adjust the basic zoom and tilt levels to your needs. Three preset levels are available. There is also a manual mode when you can set the zoom and tilt levels with the buttons on the left.
 Automatic Overview ON	When selected, the map zooms out to show an overview of the surrounding area if the next route event (manoeuvre) is far. When you get close to the event, the normal map view returns.
 Colours Auto	Switch between daytime and night colour modes or let the software switch between the two modes automatically a few minutes before sunrise and a few minutes after sunset.
 Day Map Colour	Select the colour scheme used in daytime mode.
 Night Map Colour	Select the colour scheme used in night mode.
 3D Vehicle Gallery	Replace the default position marker to one of the 3D vehicle models. You can select separate icons for different vehicle types selected for route planning. Separate icons can be used for car and the other vehicles.
 Landmarks ON	Show or suppress 3D landmarks, 3D artistic or block representations of prominent or well-known objects.
 Buildings ON	Show or suppress 3D city models, 3D artistic or block representation of full city building data containing actual building size and position on the map.
 Track Logs ON	Turn on or off track log saving, that is, saving the sequence of the locations your journeys go through.
 Place Markers	<p>Select which Places to show on the map while navigating. Too many Places make the map crowded so it is a good idea too keep as few of them on the map as possible. For this, you have the possibility to save different Place visibility sets. You have the following possibilities:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Tap the checkbox to show or hide the Place category.</li> <li>• Tap the name of the Place category to open the list of its subcategories.</li> <li>• Tap  to save the current Place visibility set or to load a previously saved one. Here you can also revert to the default visibility settings.</li> </ul>

### 5.3.6 Visual guidance settings


Adjust how the software helps you navigate with different kinds of route related information on the Map screen.

 <b>Data Fields</b>	<p>The data fields in the corner of the Map screen can be customised. Tap this button and select the values you want to see. The values can be different when you navigate a route from when you are just cruising without a given destination. You can select general trip data like your current speed or the altitude, or route data related to your final destination or the next waypoint on your route.</p>
 <b>Offer Motorway Services</b>	<p>You may need a petrol station or a restaurant during your journey. This feature displays a new button on the map when you are driving on motorways. Tap this button to open a panel with the details of the next few exits or service stations. Tap any of them to display it on the map and add it as a waypoint to your route if needed.</p>
 <b>Facility Types</b>	<p>Select the service types displayed for the motorway exists. Choose from the POI categories.</p>
 <b>Signposts</b>	<p>Whenever adequate information is available, lane information similar to the real ones on road signs above the road is displayed at the top of the map. You can turn this feature on or off.</p>
 <b>Junction View</b>	<p>If you are approaching a motorway exit or a complex intersection and the needed information exists, the map is replaced with a 3D view of the junction. You can turn this feature on or let the map be displayed for the whole route.</p>
 <b>Tunnel View</b>	<p>When entering tunnels, the surface roads and buildings can be disturbing. This feature shows a generic picture of a tunnel instead of the map. A top-down overview of the tunnel and remaining distance are also displayed.</p>
 <b>Route Progress Bar</b>	<p>Turn on the route progress bar to see your route as a straight line on the right side of the map. The blue arrow represents your current position and moves up as you travel. Waypoints and Traffic events are also displayed on the line.</p>
 <b>Offer Congestion Detour on Highways</b>	<p>When you slow down while driving on a motorway, there is a chance that you are in a traffic jam so the software offers you a detour using the next exit. The message shows you distance of the exit and the difference in distance and estimated time compared to the original route. You can choose from one of the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Tap Dismiss or just ignore the message if you want to keep the original route.</li> <li>• Tap Preview to see the overview of the original route and the detour to make the decision. You can accept the detour as offered or increase the bypassed motorway segment before accepting.</li> <li>• Turn to the suggested new direction and the route will be automatically recalculated.</li> </ul>

 Offer Real-time Route Alternatives	<p>Similar to the above possibility, alternative routes can be suggested when driving on normal roads. The software will select a different turn in the upcoming intersection and offers you a different route for the next section of the route.</p> <p>Your options are the similar as above but you cannot modify the offered detour.</p>
 Offer Parking Around Destination	<p>Parking at the destination may not be easy in city areas. As you approach the destination, the software can offer parking category Places near your destination. Tap the "P" button to open a top-down map with the destination and the offered parking Places. Select one and modify the route accordingly.</p>
 Offer Hints Upon Detour	<p>If you leave the recommended route and suddenly exit the motorway, the application offers different alternatives near the exit like petrol stations or restaurants. Also, if there are avoidable parts of the original route ahead (like a tunnel, a toll road or a ferry), you will find them in the list in case you want to bypass them with the help of the software.</p>
<b>Video Interrupt</b>	<p>When enabled, the device will switch back from split screen or from Audio screen to full screen map mode during voice guidance announcements. After the voice instruction the previous screen returns.</p>

### 5.3.7 Regional settings

These settings allow you to customise the application for your local language, measurement units, time and date settings and formats, as well as to choose the time zone.

Button	Description
<b>Program Language</b>	<p>This button displays the current written language of the user interface. By tapping the button, you can select a new language from the list of available languages. The application will restart if you change this setting; you are asked to confirm this.</p>
 Units and Formats	<p>You can set the distance units to be used by the program. Your software may not support all the listed units in some voice guidance languages.</p> <p>Select between 12 and 24 hours time display and the various international date display formats.</p> <p>You can also set other country specific units used to display different values in the application.</p>
<b>Time Settings</b>	<p>By default, time zone is taken from the map information and adjusted by your current location. Here you can set time zone and daylight saving manually.</p>



### 5.3.8 Trip monitor settings

Trip logs contain useful information about your trips. Trip logs can be saved manually when you reach your destination or you can turn on the automatic saving here. You can access these logs in the Trip monitor. Trip monitor is available from the More menu.

<b>Trip database size</b>	This is not a button. This line shows the current size of the trip database, the sum of all trip and track logs saved.
<b>Enable Auto-Saving</b>	Trip monitor can record statistical data of your trips. If you need these logs later, you can let the application save them automatically for you.
<b>Save Track Log</b>	Track logs, the sequence of the positions given by the GPS receiver, can be saved together with trip logs. They can later be displayed on the map. You can let the application save the track log whenever it saves a trip.

## 5.4 Trip monitor

If you save your trip logs when you arrive at some of your destinations or let the application automatically save the trip logs for you, those logs are all listed here. Tap one of the trips to see the trip statistics, speed and elevation profile.

If track log has also been saved, you can display it on the map with the selected colour.

The Trip monitor can also be accessed from the Information menu.

## **6 Glossary**

### **2D/3D GPS reception**

The GPS receiver uses satellite signals to calculate its (your) position and needs at least four signals to give a three-dimensional position, including elevation. Because the satellites are moving and because objects can block the signals, your GPS device might not receive four signals. If three satellites are available, the receiver can calculate the horizontal GPS position but the accuracy is lower and the GPS device does not give you elevation data: only 2D reception is possible.

### **Active route**

The currently navigated route. Whenever the destination is set, the route is active until you delete it or you reach your destination. See also: Route.

### **City Centre**

The city/town centre is not the geometric centre of the city/town but an arbitrary point the map creators have chosen. In towns and villages, it is usually the most important intersection; in larger cities, it is one of the important intersections.

### **GPS accuracy**

Several factors have impact on the deviation between your real position and the one given by the GPS device. For example, signal delay in the ionosphere or reflecting objects near the GPS device have a different and varying impact on how accurately the GPS device can calculate your position.

### **Map**

The software works with digital maps which are not simply the computerised versions of traditional paper maps. Similarly to the paper road maps, the 2D mode of digital maps show you streets, roads, and elevation is also shown by colours.

In 3D mode, you can see the altitude differences, for example valleys and mountains, elevated roads, and in selected cities 3D landmarks and 3D buildings are also displayed.

You can use digital maps interactively: you can zoom in and out (increase or decrease the scale), you can tilt them up and down, and rotate them left and right. In GPS-supported navigation, digital maps facilitate route planning.

### **North-up map orientation**

In North-up mode the map is rotated so its top always faces North. This is the orientation for example in Find on Map.

## **Route**

A sequence of route events, i.e. manoeuvres (for example, turns and roundabouts) to reach the destination. The route contains one start point and one or more destinations. The start point is the current (or last known) position by default. If you need to see a future route, the start point can be replaced with any other given point.

## **Heading-up map orientation**

In this mode the map is rotated so its top always points in the current driving direction. This is the default orientation in 3D map view mode.

## **Vehimarker**

The current position is shown with a blue arrow on the map by default. The direction of the blue arrow shows the current heading. This position marker can be replaced with different 3D vehicle symbols. You can even specify different Vehimarkers for different route types (depending on which vehicle type is selected for route calculation).

## **7 Copyright note**

The product and the information contained herein are subject to change without prior notification.

This manual may not, in whole or in part, be reproduced or transmitted in any form either electronically or mechanically, including photocopying and recording, without the express written consent of Alpine Electronics, Inc.

© 2014 – Alpine Electronics, Inc All rights reserved.

© 2014 – NNG KFT All rights reserved.

© 2013 HERE <http://www.nng.com/partner-materials> All rights reserved.

About the Rules of Bluetooth Electromagnetic Radiation Regulation

Thailand	This telecommunication equipment conforms to NTC technical requirement.	
UAE	<div>TRA REGISTERED No: ER0096965/12 DEALER No: DA0042125/10</div>	
OMAN	OMAN-TRA R/0872/12 D090258	